



**Library  
of the  
University of Wisconsin**

General Library System  
University of Wisconsin - Madison  
728 State Street  
Madison, WI 53706-1494  
U.S.A.







*Gesta Francorum et aliorum Hierosolymitanorum*

Anonymi  
Gesta Francorum  
et Aliorum Hierosolymitanorum

edited by

BEATRICE A. LEES, M.A.

Sometime Tutor of Somerville College, Oxford



OXFORD  
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

1924

General Library System  
University of Wisconsin - Madison  
728 State Street  
Madison, WI 53706-1494  
U.S.A.

Printed in England

303464

APR 29 1926

~~FO5~~

FO5

~~.9633~~

.9633

~~3~~

A

1924

IN MEMORIAM

MAGISTRI MEI

A. L. S.



## P R E F A C E

VON SYBEL, writing in 1881, expressed his pleasure in the acceptance by scholars of that scientific reconstruction of the history of the First Crusade which he had given to the world forty years earlier, and his hope that in the course of another forty years the results of his researches would have penetrated into text-books and school-books.<sup>1</sup>

That hope is now in process of fulfilment, but the great Chronicles of the Crusades are still only accessible in scholarly editions which are too costly, too cumbrous, and too elaborate for the ordinary reader.

This small edition of the 'primary authority'<sup>2</sup> for the history of the First Crusade, the anonymous *Gesta Francorum et aliorum Hierosolymitanorum*, is specially designed for the use of students reading for the Preliminary Examination in Modern History in the University of Oxford, but it is hoped that it may help to guide the feet of other pilgrims on the 'Way of the Holy Sepulchre', the *iter Hierosolymitanum*, for the little book forms an excellent starting-point for the study of the Crusading movement, and deserves to be more widely known. Of the three existing editions of the *Gesta Francorum*, one is included in Bongars' *Gesta Dei per Francos*, published at Hanover in 1611;

<sup>1</sup> H. von Sybel, *Gesch. des ersten Kreuzzuges*, first ed. 1841, second ed. 1881, Vorrede, ed. 1881.

<sup>2</sup> Dr. E. Barker, *The Crusades* (The World's Manuals), p. 106.



another appeared in 1866 in the third volume of the magnificent but bulky *Recueil des Historiens des Croisades, Historiens occidentaux*, published by the Paris Académie des Inscriptions. The third and most recent, Heinrich Hagenmeyer's admirable and comparatively handy edition, *Anonymi Gesta Francorum et aliorum Hierosolymitanorum*, Heidelberg, 1890, is bewildering from the very completeness of its critical *apparatus*, its wealth of prefaces, notes, and variant readings. The present edition simply aims at producing a text-book which may serve as an introduction to the more learned works on the subject. Bongars' text has been followed in spelling and in the usage, characteristic of the date of publication, of printing u and v as v initially and as u in other positions in small letters, and uniformly as V in capitals. Punctuation has been modernized, italics have been replaced by Roman type throughout, and small letters have in some cases been substituted for capitals.

My grateful thanks are due to the Master and Fellows of Gonville and Caius College and to the officers of the University Library, Cambridge, for facilitating my collation of MS. C., to Miss C. M. Ady for kind assistance in proof-reading, and to Mr. W. H. Stevenson for valuable suggestions and corrections.

The late Master of Balliol encouraged me to edit this book, which he first taught me to know. To his memory I inscribe it.

BEATRICE A. LEES.

OXFORD,  
June 1924.

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	vii
Manuscripts and Text . . . . .	vii
The Book and its Author . . . . .	ix
The First Crusade . . . . .	xvii
TEXT . . . . .	I
NOTES . . . . .	98
BIBLIOGRAPHY . . . . .	145
CHRONOLOGY . . . . .	149
INDEX . . . . .	152



# INTRODUCTION

## MANUSCRIPTS AND TEXT

THE MSS. used by Hagenmeyer in his edition of the *Gesta Francorum* were classified by him in three groups. In the first group, *BG*, he placed *B*, a Madrid MS. of the early fourteenth century, and *G*, Bongars' printed edition, which rests on two unidentified MSS. These two sources he regarded as probably nearest to the original text, since they are distinguished by the crudity and awkwardness of their style and by their agreement with early plagiarists. He therefore based his own text on them wherever they agreed. When they differed, he gave the preference as a rule to the reading which most closely coincided with the text of the early plagiarists of the *Gesta*, especially Tudebod, who probably had access to the original manuscript. He gave the variant readings of all the other known MSS. except *F*, which is late and much abbreviated, and also the readings of *R*, the *Recueil* edition.<sup>1</sup> The *Recueil* edition prints the *Gesta Francorum* under the title of *Tudebodus abbreviatus*.<sup>2</sup> It is based mainly on a twelfth-century Vatican MS., *E*, and on Bongars, with variants also from *F*, the one MS. not used by Hagenmeyer. MS. *E* is placed by Hagenmeyer in his second group *DE*, both Vatican MSS. of the twelfth century. In both there is a serious hiatus in the text (see foot-note, c. xxiii, 23), which also occurs in *H*, a MS. of the third group.

This third group, *ACH*, includes a twelfth-century MS., *A*, a MS. *H*, which seems to have once been at Kenilworth,

<sup>1</sup> Hagenmeyer, *G. F.*, *Einleitung*, §§ 7, 8, pp. 92-8.

<sup>2</sup> *Rec. des Hist. des Croisades, Hist. occidentaux*, iii.



and the thirteenth- and fourteenth-century MS. *C*, which is now in the library of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge. The remaining MS. *F* is also a Cambridge MS. now at Corpus Christi College. It dates from the fourteenth century. The present edition is based on Bongars' text, with emendations from the MSS. and Tudebod, and with variant readings from representative MSS. of Hagenmeyer's three groups. *B* represents Group I, *E* Group II, and *C* Group III. The editions of Hagenmeyer and the *Recueil* have been carefully compared with Bongars for *B* and *E* variants, and Hagenmeyer's collation of *E* has occasionally been altered in accordance with the *Recueil*. *C* has been re-collated from the original MS. Limitations of space have made it necessary to omit from the foot-notes such minor differences between the MSS. as variations in spelling, transpositions of words, and unimportant changes in grammatical construction. Where the path is so well worn it is impossible to avoid treading in the footsteps of those who have gone before, and it would be absurd to sacrifice accuracy on the shrine of originality; yet in a few cases the readings of the most recent and thorough editor, Hagenmeyer, have been rejected, though the reasons for such rejection have been fully given in the notes.

One possible source of error, perhaps of enlightenment, Hagenmeyer hardly notices. Bongars' printed folio edition of 1611 bears evidence of respect for the letter of his MS. sources, but it also suggests that he had some difficulty in reading them, or that their text was corrupt. Thus, while on p. 17 a lacuna is carefully marked by asterisks, on p. 58. occurs the obviously erroneous form *Hugo Cli Forcenez*. These points are noted as they appear in the text, as they have a definite critical value. In MSS. *BE* of the *Gesta Francorum* and in the printed editions of Bongars and the *Recueil*, the material is divided into four books of very



unequal length. If, as Hagenmeyer thinks is not improbable, the author himself is responsible for this arrangement, he probably failed to carry it beyond the ninth chapter. As, however, it was repeated by Bongars, it has been retained in this edition.

The four books are further subdivided into eight sections, each of which ends with a doxology and *Amen*, in the following sequence :

Section 1 : cc. i-iv.	Section 5 : cc. xiv-xvii.
„ 2 : cc. v-viii.	„ 6 : c. xviii.
„ 3 : cc. ix-xi.	„ 7 : cc. xix-xxix.
„ 4 : cc. xii, xiii.	„ 8 : cc. xxx-xxxix.

Each section marks a stage in the military history of the Crusade and closes with a military event, beginning with the battle on the Vardar and ending with the battle of Ascalon. Paulin Paris<sup>1</sup> suggested that these sections were of the nature of letters or 'war bulletins', which would be sent to Europe, copied, and read for edification in the churches of the West, and afterwards worked up, with additional notes, into a book. Hagenmeyer<sup>2</sup> is more convincing when he treats the *Gesta* as a diary or journal, written in sections during intervals of leisure in the course of the war, while the events recorded were still fresh in the writer's memory.

## THE BOOK AND ITS AUTHOR

In the year 1608 Jacques Bongars, the French scholar-diplomatist, made a 'Platonical Voyage' to England, 'whereof the chief occasion', as we learn from a contemporary letter to the English antiquary, William Camden,<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Chanson d'Antioche*, ed. P. Paris, vols. i, ii, Paris, 1848.

<sup>2</sup> Hagenmeyer, G. F., *Einleit.*, § 2, pp. 10-20.

<sup>3</sup> *Gulielmi Camdeni Epistolae*, Lond. 1691, p. 98, lxxii, D. Guil. Becherus G. Camdeno.



was 'to see the Universities, and search our Libraries'. In 1611 he published two folio volumes of records of the Crusades, under the title of *Gesta Dei per Francos, sive orientalium expeditionum et regni Francorum Hierosolymitani historia*. In 1612 he died, leaving his work unfinished. To Bongars' search in English libraries and to his friendship with Camden we probably owe one of the two MSS. on which he based the earliest printed edition of the anonymous *Gesta Francorum et aliorum Hierosolymitanorum*, with which the *Gesta Dei per Francos* opens, for one of those MSS. was given to him by Camden, the other by the French savant, Paul Petau. Bongars regarded the *Gesta Francorum* as an original source, the work of an Italian follower of Bohemund, and until 1641 this was the received opinion. In that year, in the fourth volume of Duchesne's *Historiae Francorum Scriptores coetanei*, appeared Besly's edition of the *Historia de Hierosolymitano Itinere* of Petrus Tudebodus, Pierre Tudeboeuf, Tudebode, or Tudebod, a French priest of Civray in Poitou. In his learned preface Besly maintained that Tudebod was the original authority, from whom the anonymous author of the *Gesta* had borrowed most of his material without acknowledgement. Besly's view was almost universally accepted, and held the field for about two centuries. Von Ranke was the first to throw doubt on it, while in 1841 von Sybel, in his epoch-making *Geschichte des ersten Kreuzzuges*, followed by the investigations of his pupil Gurewitsch,<sup>1</sup> reversed the decision of Besly, relegated Tudebod to the rank of a plagiarist, and restored the Anonymous to his pride of place as an original authority of the first importance. About the same time (1842) a Frenchman, de Saulcy,<sup>2</sup> arrived independently at much the same results. Though the editors of the *Recueil des*

<sup>1</sup> *Forsch. zur deutsch. Gesch.* xiv. 155 seq. (1874)

<sup>2</sup> *Bibl. de l'École des Chartes*, iv. 301 seq.



*Historiens des Croisades* (1866) still clung to the old opinion and called the work *Tudebodus abbreviatus*,<sup>1</sup> they were in the minority. Von Sybel's conclusions won general acceptance, and were fully borne out by Hagenmeyer's critical edition of the text, which was published in 1890.

Besly's argument for the priority of Tudebod rested mainly on certain passages in which Tudebod speaks of himself as an eyewitness, and as a writer, gives his name, and mentions his brother,<sup>2</sup> who died on the Crusade. These passages are not found in the *Gesta*, and Besly accused the anonymous author of deliberately suppressing them. Von Sybel's counter-argument, which is well summarized by Hagenmeyer, showed that the passages in question were interpolations, and urged the priority of the Anonymous on four main grounds: (i) he uses the first person throughout: Tudebod uses both the first and the third person; (ii) the Anonymous was a soldier, and writes consistently in this character: Tudebod was a priest, and writes sometimes as an ecclesiastic, sometimes, following the Anonymous, as a layman; (iii) Tudebod's additions to the *Gesta* are anecdotic and personal, and could be easily interpolated, while his omissions of passages which occur in the *Gesta* are awkward and clumsy and interfere with the text; (iv) Tudebod has used not only the *Gesta*, but the work of Raymond of Agiles, whereas the Anonymous has not incorporated a single passage from Raymond, though Hagenmeyer believes that both Raymond and his contemporary Fulcher of Chartres have borrowed from the *Gesta*.

The *Gesta Francorum*, then, the short, simply written record of an unknown soldier-pilgrim, is now recognized as one of the main sources from which the medieval historians

<sup>1</sup> *Hist. occ.* iii. 121 seq.

<sup>2</sup> Or brothers. Cf. Hagenmeyer, *G. F.* c. xxiii, note 9; c. xxx, note 32. Cf. notes, c. xxiii, 9; xxx. 62.



of the First Crusade drew their inspiration, a source whence the stream of Crusading literature began to flow even before the First Crusade was at an end.

Among the direct plagiarists who copied the *Gesta* almost word for word, without acknowledgment of their debt, are Tudebod and, in a less degree, the anonymous twelfth-century *Historia belli sacri*.<sup>1</sup> In the reaction in favour of the *Gesta*, the real value of these authorities is in danger of being forgotten. Tudebod was, fairly certainly, himself an eyewitness of the First Crusade, and his additions to the text of the *Gesta* reflect his own experience. If he plagiarizes, he is the earliest of the plagiarists, and he may represent the original text better than some of the later copyists, who thought to improve the rude style of the Anonymous. The *Historia belli sacri*, too, which Mabillon<sup>2</sup> actually regarded as the source of Tudebod and of the *Gesta*, may often serve to establish a reading, or to clear up a textual difficulty. More subtle in their method of imitation are the writers of the first three decades of the twelfth century who mention the *Gesta* as their authority, but take credit to themselves for embellishing and elaborating the crude raw material with which they deal. Baudri, Archbishop of Dol, Guibert, Abbot of Nogent-sur-Seine, and Robert, the Monk of Rheims,<sup>3</sup> all speak of the little anonymous book, with its rustic style, *libellum . . . nimis rusticanum*,<sup>4</sup> on which their own more polished work is based.

The influence of the *Gesta Francorum* can also be traced, though in a more indirect form, in the writings of such imitators and occasional borrowers as Raymond of Agiles,

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Bibliography, p. 146.

<sup>2</sup> *Museum Italicum*, tom. i, pars ii, Paris, 1687.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Bibliography, p. 146.

<sup>4</sup> Baldr. Dol. Ep. *Hist. Hierosol. Rec. Hist. occ.* iv. 10 'Nescio quis compiler, nomine suppresso, libellum super hac re nimis rusticanum ediderat'.



Fulcher of Chartres, Ekkehard of Aura, who in 1101 read at Jerusalem a little book on the Crusade, which may have been a copy of the *Gesta*,<sup>1</sup> and the versifiers Fulco and Gilo of Paris.<sup>2</sup> Even the romantic and legendary sources, the *Chanson d'Antioche* and the romance of Godfrey de Bouillon, probably owe something to the camp gossip and the marvellous tales preserved in this unpretending contemporary record, and thus it has passed into the picturesque pages of Albert of Aix, and has set its mark on the great Crusading history of William of Tyre.

If the author of the *Gesta* must remain anonymous, he has at least unconsciously revealed himself in all but name in his book, and from that book Bongars, von Sybel, and Hagenmeyer have reconstructed his personality with scholarly care and insight. There can be no doubt that he was a layman and a soldier, presumably of gentle birth, since he served as a knight till poverty and misfortune reduced him to the ranks of the *pedites*.<sup>3</sup> He was, in all probability, a southern Italian of Norman stock, for whom the practical and immediate knowledge of the Crusade began in connexion with Bohemund's division of the Crusading host, to whom Bohemund, that most valiant warrior, wise and prudent, dignified and honourable, strong and unconquered, is the ideal leader, *honor et decus totius mundi, bellorum arbiter et certaminum iudex, athleta Christi*, and, for the anonymous chronicler himself,

<sup>1</sup> Hagenmeyer, *G. F.*, *Einleit.*, p. 60 seq. Von Sybel, *Gesch. des ersten Kreuzz.*, p. 58, ed. 1881, regards this identification as 'not impossible'.

<sup>2</sup> Hagenmeyer adds Ralph of Caen and Hugh of Fleury, *op. cit.*, *Einleit.*, pp. 68, 69. Cf. Bibliography, p. 146.

<sup>3</sup> c. ix, pp. 19-20, 'Deus . . . qui non permisit suos *milites* perire . . . nobis adiutorium misit'; c. xxix, p. 67, 'Nos . . . *equitavimus* contra illos'; c. xxxvi, p. 85, 'Nostri milites, *praecedentes nos*'. Cf. c. xxxvii, p. 87 '*pauperes homines pedites*', Hagenmeyer, *G. F.*, *Einleit.*, p. 6.



*dominus*, the feudal lord,<sup>1</sup> of whose *famulatus*, or personal following, he seems to have formed part.<sup>2</sup> The cry of *Deus vult*, which the French Crusaders first heard at Clermont, echoes for the Italian-Norman as *Deus le volt*, from the siege of Amalfi; the crosses that his comrades wear are cut from the splendid cloak of his hero Bohemund.<sup>3</sup> The names of the petty princes of southern Italy are familiar to him, though he only knows the more important leaders of the northern French army.<sup>4</sup> He uses Italian-Latin constructions and words, such as *piscina*, *tenda*, *merula*, and places the conquest of his modest home-land Apulia among the objects of ambition of the powerful Eastern prince Kerboga,<sup>5</sup> while he shows a more intimate acquaintance with both Byzantine and Saracen affairs than would be likely to be possessed by a Frenchman or even by a North Italian. To judge from his use of the first person and from the vividness of his descriptions of particular incidents, he took the cross at Amalfi in the summer of 1096, and crossed over to the Balkan Peninsula with the South Italian division later in the same year. He was present at the battle of the Vardar, encamped under Tancred's command outside Constantinople during the negotiations of the Crusading leaders with the Emperor Alexius, crossed the Bosphorus in the spring of 1097, went through the siege of Nicaea and the battle of Dorylaeum, and before the end of October 1097 had settled down to the siege of Antioch, in Bohemund's camp, to the east of the city.<sup>6</sup> He took part in the plunder-raid of Bohemund and Robert of Flanders in the last days of 1097; he helped to build the fort opposite the Bridge Gate in March 1098 and was in the fight of the 6th of March, when the Crusaders

<sup>1</sup> Cf. cc. iv, v, vi, vii, ix, xi, xii, xiv, xvii, xxvi, xxvii, xxix.

<sup>2</sup> c. iv, p. 7.

<sup>3</sup> c. iv. pp. 6, 7.

<sup>4</sup> cc. ii, iv.

<sup>5</sup> cc. ii, xv, xx, xxi, and notes. Hagenmeyer, *op. cit.*, *Einleit.*, p. 8.

<sup>6</sup> c. xii. p. 27.



drove the Turks over the bridge and defeated them with great slaughter.<sup>1</sup> When in June 1098 the city was betrayed by Firouz, as one of the chosen band of Bohemund's men who made the first attack, he was among those who entered Antioch by a postern gate.<sup>2</sup> When the Christians in Antioch were in turn besieged by the Turks he fought against Kerboga's army in the battle of June the 10th, and worked at the wall which was to protect Bohemund's forces from the Turks who held the citadel. He was present in the church of St. Peter when the Holy Lance was found, and on June 28, 1098, in the final battle with Kerboga, he fought on horseback, pursued the flying Turks, and shared the rejoicings over the victory.<sup>3</sup> It was probably now that he wrote that graphic account of the siege which fills eighteen of the thirty-nine chapters into which his book is divided. In the late November of 1098 he accompanied Bohemund to Marra, but after the siege and capture of the town, instead of returning with his lord to Antioch, he seems to have joined the Provençal army and to have gone on to Jerusalem with the followers of Count Raymond of Toulouse. With them he experienced the siege of Arca and the journey by the coast-towns to the Holy City. Here he fought, both in the attack on June 13, 1099, and in the final successful assault on June 15, when Jerusalem was taken by the Crusaders. The book ends with a lively description of the battle of Ascalon on August 12, 1099, and of the triumphant return to Jerusalem of the booty-laden Franks.<sup>4</sup>

The author of the *Gesta* was thus admirably fitted by position and experience to be a chronicler of the great expedition in which he played so active a part. As a knight, enjoying the privileges of the knightly status, he would

<sup>1</sup> c. xviii, p. 36 *seq.*

<sup>2</sup> c. xx, p. 45.

<sup>3</sup> cc. xxiii, xxviii, xxix, xxx, pp. 54, 63, 65, 69.

<sup>4</sup> cc. xxxi-ix, pp. 72-97.



learn something of the policy of the leaders in their divided counsels. As a foot-soldier, during the later months of the Crusade, he knew the sufferings and the courage of the *pauperes homines pedites*. As a layman he stands out conspicuously in the crowd of ecclesiastical chroniclers. Prejudices he may have, but they are of another kind from those of the emotional Provençal priest, Raymond of Agiles,<sup>1</sup> or the didactic royal chaplain, Fulcher of Chartres. No less well was he fitted for his task by his nature and character. A thorough soldier, he has all the military virtues—loyalty, steadfast resolution, personal bravery, scorn of cowardice, and admiration of skill and courage in others, even in his enemies the Turks, *bellorum ingeniosissimi*.<sup>2</sup> In recalling the stress of battle his unimpassioned style can kindle into eloquence.<sup>3</sup> He is keenly interested in military operations and in the art of war, and is a first-rate authority for the strategy and tactics of the First Crusade.<sup>4</sup> With the Norman adaptability and spirit of adventure he combines Norman shrewdness and common sense. He is practical, observant, fair-minded, sagacious. Yet he is full of the simple, somewhat credulous religious faith of his time and surroundings, that faith which had brought Norman Italy into peculiarly close relations with the Papal See. If he does not see visions himself, he gives credence to the visions of others; he accepts the genuineness of the Holy Lance without hesitation; he believes in the appearance of the soldier-saints and their spirit-armies at the battle of Antioch, because 'several of our men saw these things'.<sup>5</sup> His book is a diary, a chronicle of personal experience, but it is some-

<sup>1</sup> He took priest's Orders during the Crusade.

<sup>2</sup> c. ix, p. 20.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. c. xvii, where the Constable Robert Fitz Girard is compared to a famished lion raging among the flocks and herds.

<sup>4</sup> Von Sybel, *Gesch. des ersten Kreuzz.*, pp. 27-9, ed. 1881. Cf. Oman, *Art of War*. vol. 1, Bk. v. <sup>5</sup> cc. xxviii, xxix, pp. 63-9.



thing more ; it is a record of the great deeds wrought by God through the Crusaders ; it has a unity of purpose and a certain epic dignity, quite apart from the personality of its author. This the author feels. If he uses the first person, it is always the first person plural, not the ' editorial we ', but the symbol of the body corporate. He sinks the individual in the cause ; he tastes the joy of a common interest and of organized common action. Above all, he is in touch with reality. ' He writes his Latin ', says Hagenmeyer,<sup>1</sup> ' just as he was accustomed to think in his Italian-Norman idiom.' It is this honest provincialism, which the later polite editors condemned as rusticity, which makes his work precious. He describes in simple language what he sees, not what other people expect him to see, and therefore ' he being dead yet speaketh '.

## THE FIRST CRUSADE

### I. *Causes and Leaders of the Crusade.*

The eleventh century ended with a great adventure.<sup>2</sup> In November 1095 Pope Urban II at Clermont made the persuasive speech which was answered by the cry of *Deus vult* and the inauguration of the Holy War, the *Bellum Sanctum*.<sup>3</sup> In July 1099 the victorious Crusaders, ' weeping for excess of joy ', bent in adoration before the goal of their armed pilgrimage, the ' Sepulchre of our Saviour Jesus Christ ',<sup>4</sup> and the first Act in the drama of the Crusades came to its appropriate close.

The Holy War appealed to many of the strongest human

<sup>1</sup> *G. F., Einleit.*, p. 35.

<sup>2</sup> T. Fuller, *The Holy Warre*, Bk. i, c. viii, ed. 4, 1651 : ' The Pope alone was the gainer by this great adventure.'

<sup>3</sup> He preached on the day before the Council closed, probably November 27. Hagenmeyer, *Chronologie*, p. 9.

<sup>4</sup> *Gesta Franc.*, c. xxxviii.



impulses and passions, religious sentiment, the fighting instinct, romance and the lure of the unknown, the love of adventure and the hope of gain. So many-sided a phenomenon has been attributed to many causes, but probably the anonymous author of the *Gesta Francorum* touched the heart of the matter when he wrote of the *motio valida*, the wave of unrest which was passing through Western society at the time appointed by God.<sup>1</sup> About the same date another anonymous chronicler in remote England, in writing of the Crusade, used much the same words: 'In this year there was a mighty stirring (*mycel styrung*) of the people and of the peoples of other lands also.'<sup>2</sup> There can be little doubt that the First Crusade was in the main a religious movement which owed the force of its impetus to the peculiar conditions of the age, and was in itself only one manifestation of the general quickening and awakening, economic, political, social, religious, and intellectual, of a century which had known the fret and strain, the 'mighty stirring' of revival and reform, alike in Church and in State. Behind the First Crusade lay many new interests and activities: the growth of towns and commerce, the expansion of the Norman race, the development of monasticism and of asceticism, of missions and of organized pilgrimage; the investiture struggle, also, with the controversial literature to which it gave birth; and, it must always be remembered, the constant menace of the Turkish advance in Asia. In 1071 the Turks occupied Jerusalem, and the fatal battle of Manzikert, following on the Seljuk conquest of Armenia, broke down the feeble defences of the Byzantine Empire. By 1078 Jerusalem was in the hands of the Seljuks, while in 1084 Antioch, one of the patriarchates of the Greek Church, was lost to Christianity. Constantinople was seriously threatened by the Seljuk Sultan of

<sup>1</sup> *Gesta Franc.*, c. i.

<sup>2</sup> *Anglo-Saxon Chron.*, sub ann. 1096.



Rūm or Iconium when the great conqueror Malik Shah died in 1092, and internal quarrels weakened the power of his successors.<sup>1</sup> But the danger was still acute. Fulcher of Chartres, who was present at the Council of Clermont, mentions the occupation of the Christian provinces of Rūm (*Romania*) by the Turks as one of the reasons for the Pope's crossing the Alps into France in 1095. Urban II seems, too, to have laid special stress in his Crusading speech on the importance of helping the Eastern Christians to check the tide of Turkish conquest, which had reached the Bosphorus.<sup>2</sup> Piety and Policy<sup>3</sup> went hand in hand in this high enterprise.

It is often said that the Crusades were but part of the ceaseless struggle between East and West, taking a religious form in an age of world-religions<sup>4</sup> and a military form in an age of militarism and of fighting faiths. There had been peaceful pilgrimages to the Holy Land and religious wars against infidel Moors in Spain and Arabs in Sicily before the First Crusade united the pilgrimage motive with Christian militancy. Later romance not only set Charlemagne and his paladins to fight the Mohammedans of Spain, but sent them on a pilgrimage to Jerusalem "without shields or lances or sharp swords."<sup>5</sup> The Crusaders trod the 'road of

<sup>1</sup> Cf. L. Bréhier, *L'Église et l'Orient : Les Croisades*, p. 50 seq. *Camb. Med. Hist.*, vol. iv, c. x.

<sup>2</sup> F. of Chartres, c. i: 'ad illud scilicet quod Brachium Sancti Georgi vocant Turci et Arabes, apud Romaniae fines'.

<sup>3</sup> T. Fuller, *op. cit.*, Bk. i, c. ix.

<sup>4</sup> Von Sybel, *Gesch. des ersten Kreuzz.*, ed. 1881, p. 145; E. Barker, *The Crusades*, p. 3 seq. vol. ii.; C. R. Beazley, *The Dawn of Modern Geography*, vol. ii, Bréhier, *L'Église et l'Orient : Les Croisades*.

<sup>5</sup> G. Paris, *La Chanson du pèlerinage de Charlemagne* (extr. de la *Romania*, ix), Paris, 1880. Gaston Paris thought that both this poem and the *Chanson de Roland*, in which appears the idea of the Holy War against Islam, were anterior to the First Crusade. Bréhier, *op. cit.*, p. 48; Barker, *op. cit.*, p. 13. This view is controverted by Bédier and by Boissonnade, who connect the *Chanson de Roland*



Charles the Great ' <sup>1</sup> more truly than they knew. They were not merely pilgrims, *peregrini*, but ' the pilgrim knights of Christ ', *Christi milites peregrini*.<sup>2</sup>

The majority of the Western chroniclers of the eleventh century, the actual eyewitnesses of the First Crusade, saw in it the fulfilment of prophecy, the work of God, acting through the Church and the Pope, the Head and Father of the Church. Later writers magnified the personal responsibility for the initiative of the Holy War. The *Chanson des chétifs* and the *Chanson d'Antioche*, the *Historia belli sacri*, Albert of Aix, and William of Tyre, with the modern historians who relied mainly on these authorities, made Peter the Hermit the forerunner of Urban II, and the author and instigator of the Crusade. In the narratives of the eyewitnesses of the movement he falls into his proper place as a successful and eloquent preacher and recruiting agent, and a leader of the ill-fated ' Peasants ' Crusade ' of 1096. After the establishment of the House of Boulogne on the throne of Jerusalem, Godfrey of Bouillon became a hero of romance, the *pio Goffredo* to whom, in Tasso's *Gerusalemme Liberata*, the heavenly message is sent which starts the Crusade. Ralph of Caen exalts Tancred. The author of the *Gesta* emphasizes the great services of Bohemund. Yet in the early twelfth century the English William of Malmesbury could assert that Urban's secret intention was by Bohemund's advice to excite almost the whole of Europe to undertake an expedition into Asia, that Urban might engage auxiliaries and recover Rome from the Anti-Pope, and that Bohemund might gain Illyria and Macedonia, which he claimed as his with the French Crusades in Spain, and put its composition in the early twelfth century. Coulet has also shown that the *Chanson du pèlerinage* was probably written in the twelfth century, at a later date than the *Chanson de Roland*. Cf. Notes, c. ii. 6-8, p. 100. Bibliography, p. 147 (iv) Legend. <sup>1</sup> *Gesta Franc.*, c. ii.

<sup>2</sup> *Gesta Franc.*, cc. iv, vi, vii, xii, &c., c. xxx.



due, because Robert Guiscard had won these lands from Alexius Comnenus.<sup>1</sup> In the nineteenth century Sir Francis Palgrave,<sup>2</sup> who was unjust to the Crusaders, and belittled the movement altogether, called 'the anticipated partition of the Greek Empire' the 'final cause of the First Crusade', and compared Bohemund to 'Master Byends' in the *Pilgrim's Progress*. To the Provençal Chronicler Raymond of Agiles, the Count of Toulouse, at least after the death of the Papal legate, is the central figure of the expedition, who might, had he so chosen, have been king of Jerusalem. From a twelfth-century Syrian and Armenian source,<sup>3</sup> even, comes a sort of medieval 'Jenkins' Ear' story which tells how Raymond of Toulouse, when on pilgrimage to Jerusalem, had an eye struck out in a quarrel with the Turks, and how he picked it up, brought it to Rome, showed it everywhere and roused the fanaticism which led to great armies setting out for Constantinople, which they besieged 'for seven years'. Modern criticism turns from these flights of fancy to the simplicity of the early records, and sees in the First Crusade the work of medieval faith and French idealism directed and regulated by the Church. Behind the 'great adventure' stands the French Pope; a French bishop, Adhémar of Le Puy, the Papal representative, is the accredited leader, *rector et pastor*,<sup>4</sup> of the armed pilgrimage; the Franks take the cross, the homes of France and Italy are left empty. In his opening chapters<sup>5</sup> the author of the *Gesta* has seized, with a sure instinct, on the essentials of the

<sup>1</sup> Cf. W. of Malmesbury, *G. R.*, Lib. IV, c. 2. Cf. Anna Comnena, *Alexiad.*

<sup>2</sup> *England and Normandy*, iv, c. x.

<sup>3</sup> Michael the Great (the Syrian). Cf. Hagenmeyer, *G. F.*, iii. 1, note 3.

<sup>4</sup> *Gesta Franc.*, c. xxx.

<sup>5</sup> *Ibid.*, cc. i, ii.



Holy War: the motive, the divine command; the objective, the Sepulchre of Christ; the incentive, the Pope's inspired pleading, which gave form and voice to vague inarticulate desires; the result, the concerted action of Western Christendom, responsive to an emotional appeal.<sup>1</sup>

## 2. *Course of the Crusade.*

The history of the First Crusade has been written from many different points of view, racial, religious, political, economic, military, romantic.<sup>2</sup> For this very reason the accounts of those who wrote from personal knowledge, before the tide of controversy had begun to flow, deserve careful study. It is convenient to adopt the usual modern division of the First Crusade into a prelude, the 'Crusade of the people', or the 'Peasants' Crusade', and the main action, the 'Crusade of the Princes', or the 'Barons' Crusade'.<sup>3</sup>

The second chapter of the *Gesta Francorum* is occupied with the popular Crusade. Three out of the five bands which constituted that Crusade, those of Gottschalk, Emicho, and Folkmar or Fulk, had already perished or dispersed before the Anonymous began to write, but he shows special knowledge of the fortunes of Peter the Hermit and Walter the Penniless, after they joined forces at Constantinople.<sup>4</sup> He describes, not without prejudice, the disorderly behaviour of Peter's followers, the change in the attitude of the Emperor Alexius towards them, and their tragic adventures in Asia Minor. He speaks of the pride of

<sup>1</sup> Cf. von Sybel, *op. cit.*, p. 30; Bréhier, *op. cit.*, c. iv, § 1; Barker, *op. cit.*, pp. 1-14.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Bibliography, p. 145.

<sup>3</sup> Barker, *op. cit.*; Bréhier, *op. cit.*, c. iv, § 4, p. 70. Bréhier calls 'la croisade des barons' 'la véritable croisade'.

<sup>4</sup> Hagenmeyer, *G. F.*, ii, notes 67, 73. Cf. *P. der Eremitte*. Cf. Chalandon, *Alexius Comnène*. Anna Comnena makes Elchanes, the Turkish commander, knowing the avarice of the Celts, entice the followers of 'Kukupeter' out of the camp and into an ambush, by spreading the report that the Normans had taken Nicaea and were about to divide the spoil.



the Franks, which led the Germans and Italians to separate from them, of the eight days' waterless siege of *Exerogorgo*, the reputed treachery of the German leader Rainald, his sally and defeat, the destruction of the followers of Walter the Penniless, the attack on the camp at Civitot, the great joy of the Emperor at these disasters and the final rescue by the Greeks. In reality Alexius, whatever his private feelings may have been, had sent regular supplies to the Crusaders, and it was fear of the Greeks which eventually induced the Turks to fall back on Nicaea ; the Anonymous is unfair to the Emperor throughout. The story of Rainald's treachery, too, is only told by the Anonymous and his copyists, and Hagenmeyer doubts its truth. But true or false, it seems probable that it came from an Italian source. The vivid details of the suffering of the thirst-tortured Crusaders at *Exerogorgo*, couched to some extent in Italian-Latin language, the special mention of the *Lombardi et Longobardi* who chose Rainald as their leader, the earlier mention of *Lombardos et Longobardos* whom Peter the Hermit found at Constantinople on his arrival, all suggest that this chapter of the book was written from information derived from the personal experience of the author's compatriots. This, also, would account for the bitter feeling against Alexius, who was from the first suspicious of Bohemund and his Italian Normans. No sooner had the Crusaders set foot on Byzantine soil than the question of their relations with the Greeks became critical. After the 'Peasants' came the 'Princes'. As the three great armies of Northern and Southern France and Southern Italy approached Constantinople, the Emperor Alexius can hardly be blamed for trying to deal diplomatically with a very difficult situation and to negotiate separately with each Crusading leader. In particular he dreaded the ambition of Bohemund and the Normans of Southern Italy, of whose quality he had already had



a taste in the invasion of the Balkan Peninsula and the battle of Durazzo or *Dyrrachium* (1081). Though he succeeded in the end, after blood had flowed on both sides, in winning recognition as the feudal suzerain of all the Crusading leaders except Raymond of Toulouse and Tancred, he only seems to have won over Bohemund by substantial concessions and specious promises. The author of the *Gesta* makes the Emperor promise a grant of territory in the neighbourhood of Antioch, the seat of Bohemund's later principality.<sup>1</sup> Anna Comnena says that Bohemund asked for the high office of Grand Domestic, which would have carried with it the military command of the Crusading armies.<sup>2</sup>

The Anonymous now writes as an eyewitness, and his account of the march from Durazzo to Constantinople and the negotiations with Alexius has real original value. He ends his first section with the burning of the 'fortress of heretics . . . with its inhabitants' and the subsequent victory over the Greeks at the river Vardar on February 18, 1097. His second section carries on the tale through the tangled maze of negotiations to the gathering of the Crusading forces in Asia Minor, the siege of Nicaea and the capitulation of the Turkish garrison to the Greeks on May 19, 1097. The Emperor smoothed over the friction caused by his retention of the city by means of lavish gifts to the Franks. An embassy was dispatched to Egypt to negotiate for an alliance with the Fatimites, who were hostile to the Seljuk Turks, and by June 29, 1097, the

<sup>1</sup> Hagenmeyer, *G. F.*, vi. 3, note 20; von Sybel, *Gesch. des ersten Kreuzz.*, 1881, p. 270 seq. Cf. Chalandon, *op. cit.*; Barker, *op. cit.*; Bréhier, *op. cit.* Von Sybel and Hagenmeyer reject the evidence of the *Gesta* for this promise of territory. Bohemund never referred to it subsequently in confirmation of his claims.

<sup>2</sup> Bréhier, *op. cit.*, p. 75; Chalandon, *op. cit.*, p. 183; von Sybel, *op. cit.*, p. 273; *Camb. Med. Hist.*, vol. iv, c. xi, p. 335.



Crusading army had started on its march in a south-easterly direction across Asia Minor, accompanied by the Byzantine representative Tatikios and his troops. The Crusaders marched in two divisions, some miles apart. Godfrey of Bouillon, Raymond of Toulouse, and Adhémar, Bishop of Le Puy, Hugh the Great, and Robert of Flanders were on the right, Bohemund and Tancred, with Robert of Normundy, on the left. No care seems to have been taken to keep the two bodies in touch with one another, an error which nearly proved fatal. On the third day of the march, July 1, the army of Kiliġ Arslān, the Seljuk Sultan of Rūm, attacked Bohemund's division in force. The author of the *Gesta* fought with the mounted knights, and his description of the battle, though vivid, is imperfect, but by supplementing it from Raymond of Agiles, Fulcher of Chartres, and Ralph of Caen, a good idea of the general action can be formed.<sup>1</sup> The light Turkish horse harassed the heavy-armed Frankish cavalry with showers of darts and arrows, as they galloped along their lines with wild battle-cries, *iaculando ac spiculando et . . . sagittando*.<sup>2</sup> They had begun to pillage the tents in the rear of the Norman army and were murdering priests and women, when the other division of Crusaders, to whom Bohemund had sent an urgent message,<sup>3</sup> at last came riding to the rescue, and the day was saved. 'God Almighty sent us help,' writes the Anonymous: 'unless the Lord had been with us in the battle none of us would have escaped.'

The way was now open to Antioch. The Crusaders marched by the old Roman road to Iconium and Heraclea,

<sup>1</sup> Oman, *Art of War*, vol. i., Bk. v, c. iii; von Sybel, *op. cit.*, p. 291 seq.

<sup>2</sup> Hagenmeyer, *G. F.*, c. ix.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid., ix. 6, notes 28, 29, 30. Bongars' edition of the *Gesta* contains the passage in which the Anonymous describes the reluctance of the princes to believe the messenger's report. *Verumtamen hoc fallacium est totum*.



where Baldwin of Boulogne and Tancred left the main army, crossed the Taurus range into Cilicia, and occupied Tarsus. After a sharp quarrel with Tancred over the possession of the city, followed by a reconciliation and further conquests, Baldwin rejoined the main body, only to leave it again in October 1097 for Armenia, and eventually to become the adopted heir of the Armenian prince Thoros and the founder of the Frankish County of Edessa.<sup>1</sup> For the march from Heraclea through Lesser Armenia the *Gesta Francorum* is an admirable guide.<sup>2</sup> By October 21, 1098, the first stage of the Crusade ended with the appearance of Bohemund's army before the 'royal city' of Antioch.

The siege of Antioch is the central event of the First Crusade and its importance is fully recognized by the Anonymous, who devotes four out of the eight sections of his book to its history. A battle marks the close of each of these sections: El-Bara, on New Year's Eve, December 31, 1097, when the Turks were defeated by Bohemund and Robert of Flanders; the battle of the Lake of Antioch, on Shrove Tuesday, February 9, 1098, between the Franks and Ridwan of Aleppo and his allies; the battle of March 6, 1098, ending in the victory of Bohemund and Raymond of Toulouse over the Turks of Antioch after the expedition to St. Simeon's Port, and finally the great victory over Kerboga on June 28, 1098.

The city of Antioch, almost impregnable with its splendid fortifications, its walls, its '450 towers'<sup>3</sup> and its citadel, was held by Yagi Sian (*Cassianus*), the Turkish Emir and commander. Bohemund won the Iron Bridge to the east of the city and encamped outside the East Gate, or Gate of St. Paul.<sup>4</sup> The other Crusading leaders took up positions on

<sup>1</sup> Fulcher of Chartres. Cf. Hagenmeyer, *Chron. de la Prem. Crois.*, pp. 101, 102, 103, 122, 123, 129, 130.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Notes, p. 110 seq.

<sup>3</sup> *Gesta Franc.*, c. xxxii.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Notes, p. 113 seq. Cf. plan of Antioch, Oman, *op. cit.*, vol. i. Plates vii, viii.



the north and east, but the north-western Bridge Gate and the west and south of the city were at first left open.<sup>1</sup> Though Genoese ships brought supplies to the Port of St. Simeon in November, the Crusaders' commissariat, transport, and lines of communication were ill organized, and by December the besiegers were suffering from famine. The last days of 1097 saw the raid of Bohemund and Robert of Flanders in quest of food, which ended on New Year's Eve with the battle of El-Bara, and the 'victorious and empty'<sup>2</sup> return of the raiding party to camp. With the New Year scarcity and distress increased, and William the Carpenter and Peter the Hermit covered themselves with shame by an attempt at flight. At this time, too, the Byzantine representative, Tatikios, left the camp. The Anonymous, who is hostile to *inimicus Tetigus*, says that he professed to be going in search of supplies, but that he 'falsely feigned'. Raymond of Agiles makes him cede Tarsus and other Cilician towns to Bohemund and then withdraw on the pretext of seeking help. Anna Comnena, on the other hand, attributes his departure to the intrigues of Bohemund, who was scheming to get Antioch for himself, and warned Tatikios of a plot to murder him as an agent of the treacherous Alexius. Von Sybel and Chalandon are inclined to accept this view of the matter, but Hagenmeyer believes that the famine in camp was a sufficient reason for the retirement of Tatikios, and that his subsequent failure to send the promised relief embittered the Crusaders against him. In weighing the evidence of the *Gesta* against Raymond of Agiles and Anna Comnena, though allowance must be made for the author's loyalty to Bohemund, it must always be remembered that Raymond is the ardent partisan

<sup>1</sup> Later 'Tancred's Castle' blockaded the Western Gate of St. George, *Gesta Franc.*, c. xix.

<sup>2</sup> R. of Agiles, c. viii.



of the Count of Toulouse, while Anna is a special pleader for her father Alexius, and both are more subtle politicians than the straightforward anonymous soldier-chronicler.<sup>1</sup>

The first stress of the siege was ended by the victories of February 9 and March 6, 1098, the establishment of communication with the ships at St. Simeon's Port, and the building of the fort *Machumaria* to block the Turkish exit by the Bridge Gate. By the end of May Bohemund had won a promise from the Council of Crusading leaders that the city should be his if he could gain possession of it. In the early morning of June 3, it was betrayed into his hands by Firuz the Turkish Emir, but though Yagi Sian was slain, the Turks still held out in the citadel, and by June 8 the relieving army of Kerboga, Emir of Mosul, had come up and the Crusaders found themselves transformed from besiegers into besieged. Three trying weeks followed, a time of sickness, famine, and nervous strain, when many lost heart and escaped from the beleaguered city.<sup>2</sup> It is now that in all the contemporary sources the mystic element and the elements of myth, saga, and legend become prominent, until the psychic phenomena culminate in the finding of the Holy Lance on June 14. The author of the *Gesta* retails stories of Kerboga and his mother which are probably echoes of camp gossip and prisoners' tales. Raymond of Agiles fills his pages with the visions of Peter Bartholomew and the other seers to whom the secret of the hidden Lance was revealed. Strong in the faith of Christ's direct intervention in the hour of their greatest peril, the Crusaders met and defeated Kerboga on June 28, 1098. In this great fight the Anonymous played his part, while his fellow chronicler, Raymond of Agiles, bore the Holy Lance in the

<sup>1</sup> Von Sybel, *op. cit.*, p. 330; Chalandon, *op. cit.*, p. 199 seq.; Hagenmeyer, *G. F.*, c. xvi and notes.

<sup>2</sup> On the *funambuli* cf. c. xxiii and notes.



battle, and many of the soldiers believed that they saw the heavenly hosts mounted on white horses with white standards displayed, issuing from the mountains to their aid, led by St. George, St. Mercury, and St. Demetrius. By nightfall Bohemund's standard was floating over the surrendered citadel, and Kerboga's army was in full flight.<sup>1</sup>

The end of the Crusade was not to come for more than a year, but to the long and eventful period which followed the final capture of Antioch the author of the *Gesta* only gives ten chapters. He seems to have become somewhat disillusioned and to have lost much of his 'first fine careless rapture'. His loyalty to Bohemund was weakened by his hero's constant quarrels with Raymond of Toulouse, and eventually he appears to have joined the Provençal army, and to have reached Jerusalem as a humble foot-soldier.

The last stage of the Crusade, from the battle of Antioch to the battle of Ascalon, included four months' rest at Antioch (July to November, 1098), the siege of Marra and another month of rest (Nov. 27, 1098, to Jan. 13, 1099), the march to Arca and the siege of the town (Jan. 13 to May 13, 1099), the march to Jerusalem (May 13 to June 7), the siege of Jerusalem (June 7 to July 16), the election of Godfrey as Advocate of the Holy Sepulchre, the elevation of Arnulf to the Patriarchal chair of Jerusalem, and the campaign and battle of Ascalon (August 9 to August 12, 1099).

After the death, on August 1, 1098, of the Bishop of Le Puy, political rivalry and disputes over the possession of the conquered territory bade fair to wreck the whole expedition before it had achieved its purpose. In the end,

<sup>1</sup> *Gesta Franc.*, c. xxix. Both R. of Agiles and F. of Chartres say that Kerboga was playing chess when the Crusading army marched out of the city, an incident which recalls Drake's game of bowls when the Armada was in sight.



the rank and file of the Crusaders, the *pauperes*, took the matter into their own hands,<sup>1</sup> and told Raymond of Toulouse that if none of the princes would lead them, they would go to Jerusalem by themselves, bearing the Lance, with the Lord as their leader. At Marra they even began to pull down the walls to prevent further quarrels over the town. Raymond of Toulouse, taking this popular movement as a divine warning, now identified himself with the cause of the *pauperes*, ordered the destruction of Marra, and marched barefoot out of the town, on the way to Jerusalem. But another long delay occurred at Arca, where the princes again united forces, and the old jealousies and ambitions revived. Raymond of Toulouse, who was probably already planning to secure a principality in the neighbourhood of Tripoli, revenged himself on Bohemund by favouring the claims of Alexius Comnenus to Antioch. The Normans, in return, questioned the genuineness of the Holy Lance, and Peter Bartholomew, to whom the first vision had been vouchsafed, died before Arca, after undergoing the ordeal of fire to prove the truth of the revelation. Not until May 1099 was the forward march resumed, and even then Raymond of Toulouse only yielded with great reluctance to the urgency of Godfrey of Bouillon, who now came forward as the leader of the popular party.<sup>2</sup> The siege of Arca was raised, terms were made with the Emir of Tripoli, Bohemund went back to Antioch, and on June 7, 1099, the Crusaders at last reached and invested Jerusalem, which had been wrested from the Seljuk Turks by the Egyptian Fatimites in August 1098. On July 15, 1099, after a fierce general assault, the Holy City was taken, and the Christian triumph was celebrated by

<sup>1</sup> R. of Agiles, c. xxiii.

<sup>2</sup> Von Sybel, *op. cit.*, c. x; Hagenmeyer, *G. F.*, c. xxxvi and notes; Bréhier, *op. cit.*; Barker, *op. cit.*



a ruthless massacre of unbelievers. The author of the *Gesta* was present when the city was won. He mentions the elections of Godfrey and of the Patriarch, and he concludes with the battle of Ascalon, in August 1099, when an attempt on the part of the Egyptians to regain lost ground in Syria was foiled by the Franks. He probably<sup>1</sup> finished his book towards the end of 1099, before the deposition of Arnulf from the Patriarchate. He ends, as he began, on a religious note, but the key has changed. The hope, the single-minded faith, and the spiritual exaltation of his opening chapters have grown dim in the harsh experience of the realities of war. The practical worldly element, always present in the book,<sup>2</sup> is emphasized in the ease that followed the final effort. His 'great joy' and thanksgiving after the victory of Ascalon are for the material rewards of righteousness, wheat and cheese, bread and oil, and 'all good things'. Yet, quite at the last, as he writes the accustomed doxology, his vision clears, he turns from the earthly to the heavenly Jerusalem, and adds to his usual formula the words *Dicat omnis spiritus Amen*.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Hagenmeyer, *G. F.*, *Einleit.*, pp. 17, 18.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. c. ix. The Crusaders encouraged each other at Dorylaeum by saying: 'Estote . . . unanimes in fide Christi et sanctae crucis vexilli victoria, quia hodie omnes divites, si Deo placet, effecti eritis.'

<sup>3</sup> The Camden MS. which Bongars used ended, as he notes in his preface, with the words; *Explicit via bona*.

*MSS. and Editions to which reference is made  
in the foot-notes.*

- B.* Cod. MS. Madritanus, Bibl. nat.
- C.* Cod. MS. Cantabrigiensis, Gonvilli et Cai Coll.
- E.* Cod. MS. Vaticanus Reginae Christinae.
- G.* Ed. Bongars.
- M.* Add. *Raimundi Hist. Francorum.*
- R.* Ed. *Recueil des Historiens des Croisades, Hist. occ. iii.*
- Ha.* Ed. Hagenmeyer.
- Tud.* *Tudebodi sacerdotis Sivracensis Historia de Hierosolym.*



# GESTA FRANCORVM ET ALIORVM HIEROSOLYMITANORVM

I. Cum iam appropinquasset ille terminus quem 1095  
 Dominus Iesus quotidie suis demonstrat fidelibus,  
 specialiter in Euangelio, dicens: ' Si quis vult post  
 me venire, abneget semetipsum et tollat crucem suam et  
 sequatur me ', facta est motio valida per vniuersas 5  
 Galliarum regiones: vt si aliquis Dominum studiose  
 puroque corde et mente sequi desideraret atque post  
 ipsum crucem fideliter baiulare vellet, non pigritaretur  
 Sancti Sepulchri viam celerius arripere. Apostolicus  
 namque Romanae sedis Vrbanus vltra montanas partes 10  
 quantocius profectus est cum suis archiepiscopis,  
 episcopis, abbatibus et presbyteris, coepitque subtiliter  
 sermocinari et praedicare, dicens: ' Vt si quis animam  
 suam saluam facere vellet, non dubitaret humiliter viam  
 incipere Domini; ac si denariorum ei deesset copia, 15  
 diuina ei satis daret misericordia.' Ait namque dominus  
 Apostolicus: ' Fratres, nos oportet multa pati pro  
 nomine Christi, videlicet miserias, paupertates, nuditates,  
 persecutiones, egestates, infirmitates, fames, sites et  
 alia huiusmodi, sicuti Dominus ait suis discipulis: 20  
 " Oportet vos pati multa pro nomine meo ", et, " Nolite  
 erubescere loqui ante facies hominum "; " ego vero dabo  
 vobis os et eloquium ", ac deinceps " persequetur vos  
 larga retributio. " " Cumque iam hic sermo paulatim per

*Titulus.* Incipit Itinerarium Ierusalomitanoꝝ C Liber I ER  
 I. 2 Iesus Christus BER 5 commotio ER: igitur motio Ha  
 10 Urbanus Secundus CER: om. Urbanus B 16 om.  
 dominus ER 17 vos oportet C 22 om. vero E  
 23-24 magna retributio C



25 vniuersas regiones ac Galliarum patrias coepisset  
crebrescere, Franci audientes talia, protinus in dextra  
fecere cruces suere scapula, dicentes sese Christi vnani-  
miter sequi vestigia, quibus de manu erant redempti  
tartarea.

1096 II. Iam iamque Galli e suis remoti sunt domibus.  
Fecerunt denique Galli tres partes. Vna pars Fran-  
corum in Hungariae intrauit regionem, scilicet Petrus  
heremita, et dux Godefridus, et Balduinus frater eius, et  
5 Balduinus comes de Monte. Isti potentissimi milites et  
alii plures, quos ignoro, venerunt per viam quam iam  
dudum Carolus Magnus, mirificus rex Franciae, aptari  
fecit vsque Constantinopolim. Petrus vero supradictus  
primus venit Constantinopolim Kalendis Augusti, et cum  
10 eo maxima gens Alamannorum. Illic inuenit Lombardos  
et Longobardos et alios plures congregatos, quibus  
imperator iusserat dari mercatum, sicuti erat in ciuitate,  
dixitque illis: 'Nolite transmeare Brachium, donec  
veniat maxima Christianorum virtus, quoniam vos tanti  
15 non estis, vt cum Turcis praeliare valeatis.' Ipsique  
Christiani nequiter deducebant se, quia palatia vrbis  
sternebant et ardebant, et auferebant plumbum quo  
ecclesiae erant coopertae, et vendebant Graecis, vnde  
imperator iratus est, iussitque eos transmeare Brachium.  
20 Postquam transfretauerunt, non cessabant agere omnia  
mala, comburentes et deuastantes domos et ecclesias.  
Tandem peruenerunt Nicomediam, vbi diuisi sunt  
Lombardi et Longobardi et Alamanni a Francis, quia  
Franci tumeabant superbia. Elegerunt Lombardi et  
25 Longobardi seniore[m] super se, cui nomen Rainaldus;

II. 1 Galliae (Gallie C) suis remotae (remote C) sunt domibus  
(sedibus C) BCE Ha 2 feceruntque Ha tres partes Galli ER  
9 III. kalendas Augusti BER in kl. augusti C 18 erant  
ecclesiae ER 19 iratus iussit eos ER 20 Postquam  
autem ER 23 om. Lombardi et E 24 om. Lombardi et E



Alamanni similiter ; et intrauerunt in Romaniam, et per quatuor dies ierunt vltra Nicenam urbem, inueneruntque quoddam castrum, cui nomen Exerogorgo, quod erat vacuum gente. Et apprehenderunt illud, in quo inuenerunt satis frumenti et vini et carnis, et omnium 30 bonorum abundantiam. Audientes itaque Turci quod Christiani essent in castro, venerunt obsidere illud. Ante portam castrum erat puteus, et ad pedem castrum fons viuus, iuxta quem exiit Reinaldus insidiari Turcos. Venientes vero Turci in die dedicationis S. Mikahelis, 35 qui est III. Kal. Octobris, inuenerunt Reinaldum et qui cum eo erant ; occideruntque Turci multos ex eis, alii qui remanserunt viui fugerunt in castrum, quod confestim Turci obsederunt, eisque aquam abstulerunt. Fueruntque nostri in tanta afflictione sitis, vt flebotomarent 40 suos equos et asinos, quorum sanguinem bibebant ; alii mittebant zonas atque panniculos in piscinam, et inde exprimebant aquam in os suum ; alii mingeabant in pugillo alterius et bibebant ; alii fodiebant humidam terram, et supinabant se, terramque sternebant super 45 pectora sua pro nimia ariditate sitis. Episcopi vero et presbyteri confortabant nostros, et commonebant ne deficerent, dicentes : ‘ Estote vbique fortes in fide Christi et nolite eos timere qui vos persequuntur, sicut Dominus dicit : “ Nolite timere eos qui corpus occi- 50 dunt ; animam vero non possunt occidere.” ’ Haec tribulatio fuit per octo dies. Denique dominus Alamanorum Reinaldus concordatus est cum Turcis, vt traderet socios illis ; et fingens se exire ad bellum, fugit ad illos,

27-28 et invenerunt *ER* 29-30 et invenerunt in eo *ER*  
 35 in festo *BCER* 36 qui est in Kal. Octob. *G* (Bongars) :  
*om.* qui . . . Octob. *CHaTud* 37 alii vero *ER* 37-38 *om.*  
 qui . . . vivi *BCER* 41 et sanguinem *ER* biberent *CER*  
 48-51 *om.* dicentes . . . occidere *BCE* 53 *om.* Reinaldus  
*HaTud*



55 et multi cum eo. Illi autem qui Dominum negare noluerunt, capitalem sententiam susceperunt; alios, quos coeperunt viuos, adinuicem diuiserunt quasi oues; alios miserunt ad signum et sagittabant eos; alios vendebant et donabant quasi animalia. Quidam con-  
 60 ducebant suos in domum suam, alios in Corasanum, alios in Antiochiam, alios in Aleph, aut vbi ipsi manebant. Isti primo felix acceperunt martyrium pro nomine Domini Iesu. Audientes denique Turci, quod Petrus heremita et Guualterius sine habere fuissent in Cyuito,  
 65 quae supra Nicenam urbem est, venerunt illuc cum magno gaudio, vt occiderent illos et eos qui cum ipsis erant. Cumque venissent laetantes, obuiauere Guualterio cum suis, quos Turci mox occiderunt. Petrus vero heremita paulo ante ierat Constantinopolim,  
 70 eo quod nequibat refrenare illam diuersam gentem, quae nec illum, nec verba eius audire volebat. Irruentes vero Turci super eos occiderunt multos ex eis; alios inuenerunt dormientes, alios iacentes, alios nudos, quos omnes necauerunt; cum quibus quendam sacerdotem  
 75 inuenerunt missam celebrantem, quem statim super altare martyrizauerunt. Illi vero qui euadere potuerunt, Cyuito fugerunt; alii praecipitabant se in mare, alii latebant in syluis et montaneis. Turci vero persequentes illos in castrum, adunauerunt ligna, vt eos comburerent  
 80 cum castro. Christiani igitur qui in castro erant miserunt ignem in ligna congregata, et versus ignis in Turcos quosdam eorum cremavit, sed ab illo incendio Deus nostros liberauit. Tandem Turci apprehenderunt illos viuos, diuiseruntque illos, sicut prius fecerant alios, et  
 85 disperserunt illos per vniuersas regiones has, alios in

67 *om. laetantes BCE*      69 *ante venit ER*      73 *om. alios iacentes BCE*      82 *concremavit HaR*      83 *tunc liberavit HaR: Tandem igitur ER*



Corosanum, alios in Persidem. Hoc totum est factum in mense Octobri. Audiens imperator quod Turci sic dissipassent nostros, gaudisus est valde, et mandauit pro eis, fecitque eos Brachium transmeare. Postquam vltra fuerunt, comparauit omnia arma eorum.

90

III. Secunda pars vero intrauit in Sclauiniae partes, scilicet comes de S. Aegidio Raimundus, et Podiensis episcopus. Tertia autem pars per antiquam Romae viam venit. In hac parte fuerunt Boamundus et Richardus de Principatu, Rotbertus comes Flandrensis, Rotbertus Nortmannus, Hugo Magnus, Eurardus de Puisatio, Achardus de Monte Merloi, Isuardus de Musone, et alii plures. Deinde venerunt ad portum Brandosim aut Barim, siue Otrentum. Hugo denique Magnus et Wilhelmus Marchisi filius intrauerunt mare ad portum Bari, et transfretantes venerunt Durachium. Audiens vero dux illius loci hos prudentissimos viros illic esse applicitos, mox mala cogitatio cor eius tetigit, illosque apprehendit, ac iussit Constantinopolim imperatori caute duci, quo ei fidelitatem facerent. Dux denique Godefridus primus omnium seniorum Constantinopolim venit cum magno exercitu, duobus diebus ante Domini nostri Natale, et hospitatus est extra urbem, donec iniquus imperator iussit eum hospitari in burgo urbis. Cumque fuisset hospitatus dux, secure mittebat armigeros suos per singulos dies, vt paleas et alia equis necessaria asportarent. Et iam cum putarent exire fiducialiter quo vellent, iniquus imperator Alexius sagaciter faciebat eos excubare, suisque Turcopolis et

86 Hoc . . . factum est *HaTud* : *om.* Hoc . . . Octobri *CE* 88  
*om.* et mandavit *B*, pro eis *BC*

III. I Secunda vero pars *CRHaTud* 3 Tertia vero *C* romeniam  
*B* 12 *om.* viros *CE* 13 *om.* esse *C* : applicatos *CRHaTud*  
15 quod ei *C* 18 hospitatus extra urbem *E* 20 *om.* dux *C*  
22 apportarent *CER* *om.* iam *CE* 24 *om.* sagaciter . . .  
suisque *BCE*



- 25 Pincinatis imperabat eos inuadere et occidere. Balduinus  
itaque frater ducis haec audiens, misit se in insidiis ;  
tandemque inuenit eos occidentes gentem suam, eosque  
inuasit forti animo, ac Deo iuuante superauit eos ; et  
apprehendens sexaginta ex eis, partem occidit, partem  
30 duci fratri suo praesentauit. Quod cum audisset impera-  
tor, valde iratus est. Videns vero dux inde iratum  
imperatorem, exiit cum suis de burgo, et hospitatus est  
extra urbem. Sero autem facto, infelix imperator iussit  
suis exercitibus inuadere ducem cum Christi gente.  
35 Quos dux persequens inuictus cum Christi militibus,  
septem ex illis occidit, persequendo alios vsque ad  
portam ciuitatis. Reuersusque dux ad sua tentoria,  
mansit inibi per quinque dies, donec pactum iniit cum  
imperatore ; dixitque illi imperator, vt transfretaret  
40 Brachium S. Georgii, promisitque eum habere omnem  
mercatum ibi, sicut est Constantinopoli, et pauperibus  
eleemosynam erogare, vnde potuissent viuere.
- 1096 **III.** At bellipotens Boamundus qui erat in obsidione  
Malfi Scafardi pontis, audiens venisse innumerabilem  
gentem Christianorum de Francis, ituram ad Domini  
Sepulcrum, et paratam ad proelium contra gentem  
5 paganorum, coepit diligenter inquirere quae arma  
pugnandi haec gens deferat, et quam ostensionem  
Christi in via portet, vel quod signum in certamine sonet.  
Cui per ordinem haec dicta sunt : ‘ Deferunt arma ad  
bellum congrua ; in dextra vel inter vtrasque scapulas  
10 crucem Christi baiulant ; signum vero, “ Deus le volt,  
Deus le volt, Deus le volt,” vna voce conclamant.’ Mox  
Sancto commotus Spiritu, iussit preciosissimum pallium,  
quod apud se habebat, incidi, totumque statim in cruces
- 25 imperauit turcopolis . . . inuadere illos C imperavit inva-  
dere illos ER 27 inuenit illos C 28 superauit illos C  
29 partemque C 30 om. fratri suo E 34 om. ducem B  
37 om. dux E 40 permisitque BC
- III. 7** via Christi CER : viam B 10 sonum vero HaTud  
10-11 Deus vult, Deus vult, Deus vult BCER 11 clamant C



expendit. Coepit tunc ad eum vehementer concurrere  
maxima pars militum, qui erant in obsidione illa, adeo 15  
vt Rogerius comes pene solus remanserit, reuersus-  
que Siciliam dolebat et moerebat quandoque gentem  
amittere suam. Denique reuersus iterum in terram  
suam dominus Boamundus diligenter honestauit sese  
ad incipiendum Sancti Sepulcri iter. Tandem trans- 20  
fretauit mare cum suo exercitu, et cum eo Tancredus  
Marchisi filius, et Richardus princeps, ac Rainulfus  
frater eius, et Rotbertus de Ansa, et Hermannus de  
Canni, Rotbertus de Surda valle, Rotbertus filius  
Tostani, et Hunfredus filius Radulfi, Richardus filius 25  
comitis Rainulfi, et comes de Russinolo cum fratribus  
suis, et Boello Carnotensis, et Alberedus de Cagnano, et  
Hunfredus de Monte Scabioso. Hi omnes transfretaue-  
runt ad Boamundi famulatum, et applicuerunt Bulgariae  
partibus, vbi inuenerunt nimiam abundantiam frumenti, 30  
vini, et alimentorum corporis. Deinde descendentes in  
vallem de Andronopoli, exspectauerunt gentem suam,  
donec omnes pariter transfretassent. Tunc sapiens  
Boamundus ordinauit concilium cum gente sua, confor-  
tans et monens omnes, dicens : ' Seniores, cauete omnes 35  
vos : quia nos sumus peregrini Dei. Oportet igitur nos  
esse magis bonos et humiles quam ante fuimus, et nolite  
depraedare terram istam, quia Christianorum est ; et  
nemo accipiat plus, nisi quod ei sufficiat ad edendum pro  
benedictione.' Tunc exeuntes inde, venerunt per nimiam 40  
plenitudinem de villa in villam, de ciuitate in ciuitatem,  
de castello in castellum, quousque peruenimus Castoriam,  
ibique Natiuitatem Domini solemniter celebrauimus,

15 adeo quod C      23-24 om. et Rotbertus . . . Cani E      25  
et Richardus HAR      29 in bulgarie C      30 frumenti et  
HaTud      31-32 decedentes vallem C      33 om. sapiens BCER  
35-40 monens omnes (eos B) ut boni et humiles essent, et ne  
depredarent (depredarentur B) terram istam, quae Christianorum  
erat, et nemo acciperet, nisi quod ei sufficeret ad edendum (come-  
dendum C) BCER



fuimusque ibi per plures dies et quaesiuius mercatum ;  
 45 sed ipsi noluerunt nobis assentire, eo quod valde timebant  
 nos, non putantes nos esse peregrinos, sed velle populari  
 terram, et occidere illos. Quapropter apprehendebamus  
 boues, equos et asinos, et omnia quae inueniebamus.  
 1097 Egressi de Castoria intrauimus Palagoniam, in qua erat  
 50 quoddam haereticorum castrum, quod vndique aggressi  
 sumus, moxque nostro succubuit imperio ; accenso  
 itaque igne, combussimus castrum cum habitatoribus  
 suis, scilicet haereticorum congregatione. Postea perue-  
 nimus ad flumen Bardarum. Denique perrexit dominus  
 55 Boamundus vltra cum sua gente, sed non tota. Reman-  
 sit enim comes de Russignolo cum fratribus suis. Venit  
 itaque exercitus imperatoris, et inuasit comitem cum  
 fratribus suis, et omnes qui erant cum eis. Quod audiens  
 Tancredus rediit retro, et proiectus in flumen natando  
 60 peruenit ad alios ; et duo millia miserunt se in flumen  
 sequendo Tancredum. Tandem inuenerunt Turcopulos  
 et Pinzinacos dimicantes cum nostris, quos repente  
 fortiter inuaserunt, et prudenter eos superauerunt ; et  
 apprehenderunt plures ex illis, et duxere illos ligatos  
 65 ante domini Boamundi praesentiam ; quibus ait ipse :  
 ‘ Quare, miseri, occiditis gentem Christi et meam ? Ego  
 cum vestro imperatore nullam altercationem habeo.’  
 Qui responderunt : ‘ Nos nequimus aliud agere. In roga  
 imperatoris sumus, et quicquid nobis imperat, nos  
 70 oportet implere.’ Quos Boamundus impunitos permisit  
 abire. Hoc bellum factum est in quarta feria, quae est  
 caput ieiunii. Per omnia benedictus Dominus. Amen.

## EXPLICIT LIBER PRIMVS

53 *om.* scilicet . . . congregatione *BCER* 57 *autem C om.*  
 itaque *BER* 59 proiciens se *C* 69 locati sumus *HaR* 71 *om.*  
 abire *E* 72 benedictus Deus *HaR om.* Amen *E* 73 *om.* Ex-  
 plicit . . . Primus *Ha*



## INCIPIT LIBER SECVNDVS

V. Mandauit infelix imperator simul cum nostris **1097**  
 nuntiis, vni ex suis quem valde diligebat quem et  
 Corpalatium vocant, vt nos secure deduceret per terram  
 suam, donec veniremus Constantinopolim. Cumque  
 transiremus ante illorum ciuitates, iubebat habitatoribus **5**  
 terrae, vt nobis apportarent mercatum, sicut faciebant  
 et illi quos diximus. Certe tantum timebant fortissimam  
 gentem domini Boamundi, vt nullum nostrorum sinerent  
 intrare muros ciuitatum. Volueruntque nostri quoddam  
 castrum aggredi et apprehendere, eo quod erat plenum **10**  
 omnibus bonis. Sed vir prudens Boamundus noluit  
 consentire, tantum pro iusticia terrae, quantum pro  
 fiducia imperatoris. Vnde valde iratus est propter hoc  
 cum Tancredo et aliis omnibus. Hoc factum est vespere.  
 Mane vero facto, exierunt habitatores castri, et cum **15**  
 profectione deferentes in manibus cruces, venerunt in  
 praesentiam Boamundi. Ipse vero gaudens recepit eos,  
 et cum laetitia abire permisit illos. Deinde venimus ad  
 quandam vrbem quae dicitur Serra, vbi nostra fiximus  
 tentoria, et sat habuimus mercatum illis diebus conue- **20**  
 niens. Ibique doctus Boamundus optime concordatus  
 est cum duobus Corpalatiis, et pro amicitia eorum ac  
 pro iustitia terrae iussit reddi omnia animalia quae

*Titulus. om. Incipit . . . Secundus Ha*

V. **1** Mandavit interea C      **3** om. nos E      **6** asportarent E  
**10** castellum B      **12** tam pro . . . quam pro C      **13** om.  
 valdeER: om. est C: om. propter hoc BCER      **14** om. cum C  
**15** Mane autem C      **17-18** recepit illos et permisit abire cum  
 laetitia C      **19** quendam C: quamdam HaR      **21** Ibi Boa-  
 mundus concordatus BCER



nostri depraedata tenebant; et Corpalatius illi promi-  
 25 serat missos retro mandare, et hominibus illis animalia  
 per hominem reddi. Deinde peruenimus de castello  
 in castellum et de villa in villam ad Rusam ciuitatem.  
 Graecorum autem gens exhibat et veniebat gaudens in  
 occursum domini Boamundi, nobis deferens maximum  
 30 mercatum, ibique nostros tetendimus papiliones in  
 quarta feria ante Coenam Domini; ibi etiam doctus  
 Boamundus totam gentem suam dimisit, perrexitque  
 loqui cum iniquissimo imperatore Constantinopolim,  
 suisque hominibus imperauit, dicens: 'Modeste appro-  
 35 pinquate ciuitatem; ego autem ibo prius,' qui et duxit  
 secum paucos milites. Tancredus remansit caput militiae  
 Christi; vidensque peregrinos cibos emere, ait intra se  
 quod exiret extra viam et hunc populum conduceret vbi  
 feliciter viueret. Denique intrauit vallem quandam plenam  
 40 omnibus bonis quae corporalibus nutrimentis sunt con-  
 grua, in qua Pascha Domini deuotissime celebrauimus.  
 1097 VI. Cum imperator audisset honestissimum virum  
 Boamundum ad se venisse, iussit eum honorabiliter  
 recipi, et caute hospitari extra urbem. Quo hospitato,  
 malignus imperator misit pro eo, vt veniret loqui simul  
 5 secreto secum. Illic quippe inuenit ducem Godefridum  
 cum fratre suo, ac deinde comes S. Aegidii appropin-  
 quauit ciuitati. Tunc imperator anxians et bulliens ira,

24 depradata B Corpalasius G (Bongars) 24-26 om.  
 et Corpalatius . . . reddi C 26 ordinem reddi B Ha Cf. Hist.  
 belli sacri. 26-27 om. de castello . . . villam BCE 33  
 om. loqui E om. iniquissimo HaR 34-35 om. suisque  
 . . . qui et BCER 35-36 ducens ER: deducens tamen C:  
 ducens tum B 36 Tancredus vero C 38 tunc populum  
 Ha 39 in vallem HaR: quandam vallem C 40 incre-  
 mentis CER: nocrimentis B

VI. 1 Cum autem C 3 apud extra E 4 om. malignus  
 BCER om. loqui E 5 Illuc (Tunc illuc BCER)  
 quoque (om. quoque ER) venit dux (et dux C) Godefridus Ha  
 7 anxians et bulliens G (Bongars) Ha: ebuliens ER



cogitabat quemadmodum callide fraudulenterque com-  
prehenderent hos Christi milites. Sed diuina gratia  
reuelante, neque locus, neque nocendi spatium ab eo vel <sup>10</sup>  
a suis inuenta sunt. Nouissime vero congregati omnes  
maiores natu qui Constantinopoli erant, timentes ne  
sua priuarentur patria, reppererunt in suis consiliis atque  
ingeniosis scematibus quod nostrorum duces, comites,  
seu omnes maiores imperatori sacramentum fideliter <sup>15</sup>  
facere deberent: Qui omnino prohibuerunt, dixeruntque:  
'Certe indigni sumus atque iniustum nobis videtur  
vllatenus ei sacramentum iurare. Forsitan adhuc a  
nostris maioribus saepe delusi erimus.' Ad vltimum  
quid facturi erant? Dicent, quoniam necessitate com- <sup>20</sup>  
pulsus, nolentes volentesque humiliauerunt se ad nequis-  
simi imperatoris voluntatem. Fortissimo autem viro  
Boamundo, quem valde timebat, quia olim eum saepe  
cum suo exercitu eiecerat de campo, dixit, quo-  
niam si libenter ei iuraret, quindecim dies eundi terrae <sup>25</sup>  
in extensione ab Antiochia retro daret, et octo in latitu-  
dine: eique tali modo iurauit, vt si ille fideliter teneret  
illud sacramentum, iste suum nunquam praeteriret.  
Tam fortes et tam duri milites, cur hoc fecerunt? Pro-  
pterea igitur, quia multa coacti erant necessitate. <sup>30</sup>  
Imperator quoque omnibus nostris fidem et securitatem  
dedit, iurauit etiam quia veniret nobiscum pariter cum  
suo exercitu per terram mareque; et nobis mercatum  
terra atque mari fideliter daret, ac omnia nostra perdita  
diligenter restauraret; insuper et neminem nostrorum <sup>35</sup>  
peregrinorum conturbari vel contristari in via Sancti

8-9 comprehenderet C      10 om. nocendi C      12 om. natu C  
13 reperierunt C      15 omnesque C: om. seu C      fidelitatis  
C      16 deberent (debent E). Quod CER: deberent, qui Ha  
17-18 iustum . . . nullatenus BCER      19 delusi eximus E  
20 erunt HaR      23 om. saepe E      30 scilicet quia multi C  
32 om. pariter B      33 per terram et per mare HaR      34  
terra marique HaR



Sepulcri vellet aut permitteret. Comes autem S. Aegidii erat hospitatus extra urbem in burgo, gensque sua remanserat retro. Mandauit itaque imperator comiti, vt  
 40 faceret ei hominium et fiduciam, sicut alii fecerant. Et dum imperator haec mandabat, comes meditabatur qualiter vindictam de imperatoris exercitu habere posset. Sed dux Godefridus et Rotbertus comes Flandrensis aliique principes dixerunt ei iniustum fore contra  
 45 Christianos pugnare. Vir quoque sapiens Boamundus dixit quia, si aliquid iniustum imperatori faceret, et fiduciam ei facere prohiberet, ipse ex imperatoris parte fieret. Igitur comes, accepto consilio a suis, Alexio vitam et honorem iurauit, quod nec ipse nec  
 50 per alium auferre consentiat. Cumque de hominio appellaretur, non se respondit pro capitis periculo id facturum. Tunc gens domini Boamundi appropinquauit Constantinopoli.

1097 VII. Tancredus vero et Richardus de Principatu propter iusiurandum imperatoris latenter transfreta-  
 uerunt Brachium, et fere omnis gens Boamundi iuxta illos. Et mox exercitus comitis S. Aegidii appropin-  
 5 quauit Constantinopoli. Comes vero remansit ibi cum ipsa sua gente. Vir itaque prudens Boamundus remansit cum imperatore, vt cum eo consilium acciperet, quomodo mandarent mercatum gentibus quae erant vltra Nicenam urbem. Dux itaque Godefridus iuit prius Nicomediam  
 10 simul cum Tancredo et aliis omnibus, fueruntque ibi per tres dies. Videns vero dux quod nulla via pateret per quam posset conducere has gentes vsque Niceam

41 mandaret C : mandasset B      42 habere potuisset CER  
 45 Vir itaque B      48 ideo comes C      49 nec per se HaR  
 50 ei auferre HaR : auferri consentiret C      Cum de C  
 51 non se pro cap. per. id fact. respondit HaR      om. respondit B  
 52 om. domini ER

VII. 6 gente. Boamundus itaque remansit BCER      8-9 Niceam civitatem HaR



ciuitatem, quoniam per illam viam per quam prius alii transierant, non posset modo tanta gens transire, misit ante se tria millia hominum cum securibus et gladiis, qui 15 inciderunt et aperuerunt hanc viam quae patefacta staret nostris peregrinis vsque Nicenam urbem. Quae via fuit aperta per angustam et nimis immensam montaneam, et faciebant retro per viam cruces ferreas ac ligneas, quas ponebant super stipites, vt eas nostri peregrini cognoscerent. Interea peruenimus ad Niceam, quae est caput totius Romaniae, in quarto die pridie nonas Maii; ibique castrametati sumus. Priusquam autem dominus Boamundus venisset ad nos, tanta inopia panis fuit inter nos, vt vnus panis venderetur viginti aut triginta denariis. 25 Postquam venit vir prudens Boamundus, iussit maximum mercatum conduci per mare, et pariter vtrimque veniebant, ille per terram et ille per mare, et fuit maxima vbertas in tota Christi militia.

**VIII.** In die autem Ascensionis Domini coepimus 1097 urbem vnde quaque inuadere et aedificare instrumenta lignorum turresque ligneas quo possemus murales turres sternere. Tam fortiter et tam acriter aggredimur urbem per duos dies, vt etiam foderemus murum urbis. 5 Turci quippe, licet gens barbara, qui erant in vrbe, miserunt nuntios aliis, qui venerant adiutorium ciuitati dare, in hunc modum, quod audacter secureque appropinquant, et per meridianam introeant portam, quoniam ex illa nemo eis erit obuiam nec contristabit. Quae 10 porta ipsa die a comite S. Aegidii in die Sabbathi post

14 tota gens *BER* 16 inciderent et aperirent *Ha*: incidissent et aperuissent *BER* 16-17 patefacta fieret *ER*  
22 et in *C* II. nonas *CE* 24-25 fuit apud nos *ER* 26  
Postquam vero *C*

**VIII. 2** circumquaque *HaR* 3 atque turres *HaR* quibus possemus *C* 4 aggressi sumus *C* 5 effoderemus *C* 6 Turci vero *C* om. licet gens barbara *BCER* 8 quo audacter *B* 10 illa parte *HaR* om. erit *C* neque contristaret *C*



Ascensionem Domini et episcopo Podiensi hospitata est. Qui comes veniens ex alia parte, protectus diuina virtute, ac terrenis fulgebat armis cum suo fortissimo exercitu. 15 Hic itaque inuenit contra nos venientes Turcos. Qui vndique signo crucis armatus, vehementer irruit super illos atque superauit; dederuntque fugam et fuit mortua maxima pars illorum. Qui rursus venerunt auxilio aliorum gaudentes et exultantes ad certum bellum, 20 trahentes secum funes, quibus nos ligatos ducerent Corosanum. Venientes autem laetantes, coeperunt ex cacumine montis paulatim descendere. Quotquot descenderunt, illic caesis capitibus a manibus nostrorum remanserunt; proiciebant autem nostri capita occiso- 25 rum funda in urbem, vt inde Turci magis terrerentur. Denique comes S. Aegidii et episcopus Podiensis consiliati sunt in vnum qualiter facerent subfodi quandam turrim quae erat ante tentoria eorum. Ordinati sunt homines qui hanc subfodiant, et arbalistae et sagittarii 30 qui eos vndique defendant. Foderunt namque illam vsque ad radices muri, submiseruntque postes et ligna, ac deinde miserunt ignem. Sero autem facto cecidit turris iam in nocte; sed quia nox erat, non potuerunt praeliari cum illis. Nocte vero illa surrexerunt festi- 35 nanter Turci et restaurarunt murum tam fortiter, vt, veniente die, nemo posset eos laedere ex illa parte. Modo venit comes de Nortmannia et comes Stephanus et alii plures, ac deinceps Rogerius de Barnavilla. Boamundus denique obsedit urbem in prima fronte et iuxta eum

12 et ab episcopo C hospitata fuit HaR 13 veniebat C  
 14 fulgens C 17 dederunt ER 17-18 om. dederunt . . .  
 illorum C 22 quotquot autem C 23 in manibus R: anima-  
 bus E: per manus C 25 fundis C 28 ordinatique  
 C 29 qui eam suffoderent C 30 defenderent. Suffoderunt  
 igitur C 31 om. postes E 33 scilicet quia B om. potuerunt  
 C 35 restaurauerunt HaR 37 venit Rotbertus comes  
 (Comes C) CER Normannie C



Tancredus et postea dux Godefridus ac deinde comes 40  
 Flandrensis, iuxta quem Rotbertus Nortmannus, et  
 iuxta eum comes S. Aegidii, iuxta quem Podiensis  
 episcopus. Ita vero per terram fuit obsessa, vt nemo  
 auderet exire, neque intrare ; fueruntque ibi omnes con-  
 gregati in vnum. Et quis poterat numerare tantam 45  
 Christi militiam ? Nullus, vt puto, tot prudentissimos  
 milites nec antea vidit nec vltra videre poterit. Erat  
 autem ex vna parte vrbis immensus lacus, in quo Turci  
 suas mittebant naues, et exhibant et intrabant et affere-  
 bant herbam, ligna et alia plura. Tunc nostri maiores 50  
 consiliati in vnum, miserunt nuncios Constantinopolim  
 dicturos imperatori, vt faceret naues conduci ad Ciuito,  
 vbi portus est, atque iuberet congregari boues qui eas  
 traherent per montaneas et syluas, vsque approximant  
 lacui ; quod continuo factum est, suosque Turcopulos 55  
 mandauit cum eis. Die vero quo naues fuerant con-  
 ductae, noluerunt eas statim mittere in lacum, sed, nocte  
 superueniente, miserunt eas in ipsum lacum plenas  
 Turcopolis, bene armatis. Summo autem diluculo stabant  
 naues optime ordinatae, per lacum properantes contra 60  
 vrbem. Videntes eas Turci mirabantur, ignorantes an  
 esset eorum gens, an imperatoris. Postquam autem  
 cognouerunt esse gentem imperatoris, timuerunt vsque  
 ad mortem, plorantes et lamentantes ; Francique  
 gaudebant et dabant gloriam Deo. Videntes autem 65  
 Turci quod nullatenus ex suis exercitibus adiutorium  
 habere possent, legationem mandauerunt imperatori,

41 quem comes *ER* Robertus Comes *C* Normannie *CER*  
 44 intrare aut exire *ER* neque exire *C* omnes nostri *C* 45  
 quis posset *C* 51 legatos *C* 52 qui dicerent *C*  
 53 portus atque *C* 54 usque dum approximarent *C* 55  
*om.* lacui *C* factum fuit *ER* 57-58 *om.* sed . . . lacum *G*  
 (*Bongars*) 59 bene ornatis armis *CHa* : *om.* armis *ER*  
 Summo vero *C* 61 autem Turci *C* 61-62 utrum esset *C*  
 62-63 *om.* Postquam imperatoris *E* 64 Franci vero *C*



quia ciuitatem sponte redderent, si eos omnino abire  
 70 permitteret cum mulieribus et filiis et omnibus sub-  
 stantiis suis. Tunc imperator, plenus vana et iniqua  
 cogitatione, iussit illos impunitos abire sine vlllo timore  
 ac sibi eos Constantinopolim cum magna fiducia adduci.  
 Quos studiose seruabat, vt illos ad Francorum nocumenta  
 et obstacula paratos haberet. Fuimusque in obsidione illa  
 75 per septem hebdomadas et tres dies, et multi ex nostris  
 illic receperunt martyrium et laetantes gaudentesque  
 reddiderunt felices animas Deo, et ex pauperrima gente  
 multi mortui sunt fame pro Christi nomine, qui in coelum  
 triumphantes portarunt stolam recepti martyrii, vna  
 80 voce dicentes: 'Vindica, Domine, sanguinem nostrum,  
 qui pro te effusus est, qui es benedictus et laudabilis in  
 secula seculorum. Amen.'

## EXPLICIT LIBER SECVNDVS

68 omnimodo <i>HaR</i>	72 om. cum . . . fiducia <i>C</i>	74 fui-
mus <i>ER</i>	75-76 nostris illuc <i>C</i>	79 portauerunt <i>HaR</i> :
triumphant portantes <i>C</i>	animas stolam <i>E</i>	83 om.
Explicit . . . Secundus <i>Ha</i>		



## INCIPIIT LIBER TERTIVS

**IX.** Interea reddita ciuitate et Turcis deductis Con- 1097  
stantinopolim, vnde imperator magis magisque gauisus,  
quod ciuitas reddita sit eius potestati, iussit maximas  
eleemosynas erogari nostris pauperibus. Denique prima  
die qua recessimus a ciuitate, venimus ad quendam 5  
pontem, ibique mansimus per duos dies. Tertia autem  
die, priusquam lux coepisset oriri, surrexerunt nostri, et  
quia nox erat, non viderunt tenere vnam viam, sed sunt  
diuisi per duo agmina et venerunt diuisi per duos dies. In  
vno agmine fuit vir Boamundus et Rotbertus Nortman- 10  
nus et prudens Tancredus et alii plures; in alio fuit  
comes S. Aegidii et dux Godefridus et Podiensis  
episcopus et Hugo Magnus comesque Flandrensis et  
alii plures. Tertia vero die irruerunt Turci vehementer  
super Boamundum et eos qui cum ipso erant. Con- 15  
tinuo Turci coeperunt stridere et garrere ac clamare  
excelsa voce, dicentes diabolicum sonum nescio quo  
modo in sua lingua. Sapiens vir Boamundus videns  
innumerabiles Turcos, procul stridentes et clamantes  
daemoniaca voce, protinus iussit omnes milites descen- 20  
dere et tentoria celeriter extendere. Priusquam tentoria  
fuissent extensa, rursus dixit omnibus militibus: 'Seniores  
et fortissimi milites Christi, ecce modo bellum angustum  
est vndique circa nos. Igitur omnes milites eant viriliter  
obuiam illis, et pedites prudenter et citius extendant 25  
tentoria.' Postquam vero hoc totum factum est Turci

*Titulus. om.* Incipit . . . Tertius *Ha*

**IX. 3** civitas eius reddita sit potestati *C* 5-6 quandam  
civitatem *C* 9 veneruntque *C* 10 nobilis vir *C* 10-11  
Comes Normannie Rotbertus *C*: Nortmannorum comes *ER*  
11-14 *om.* in alio . . . plures *E* 18 sapiens autem *C* 24 erant  
viriliter *E*



vndique iam erant circumcingentes nos, dimicando,  
iaculando ac spiculando et mirabiliter longe lateque  
sagittando. Nos itaque, quanquam nequiuimus resistere  
30 illis neque sufferre pondus tantorum hostium, tamen  
pertulimus illuc vnanimiter gradum. Foeminae quoque  
nostrae in illa die fuerunt nobis in magno refugio, quae  
afferebant ad bibendum aquam nostris praeliatoribus,  
et fortiter semper confortabant illos pugnantes et  
35 defendentes. Vir itaque sapiens Boamundus protinus  
mandauit aliis, scilicet egregio comiti de S. Aegidio et  
inclito duci Godefrido, Hugoni Magno atque honestis-  
simo Podiensi episcopo aliisque omnibus Christi  
militibus, quo festinent et ad bellum citius approximent,  
40 dicens: 'Etsi hodie luctari volunt, viriliter veniant.' Qui  
omnimodo prohibentes deludentes illos et dicentes:  
'Veruntamen hoc fallacium est totum.' Nam nos non  
credebamus iam illos esse tam prudentes quod amplius  
auderent se erigere et praeliari nobiscum. Dux itaque  
45 Godefridus audax et fortis, ac Hugo Magnus simul  
venerunt prius cum suis exercitibus, episcopus quoque  
Podiensis prosecutus est illos, vna cum suo exercitu, et  
comes de S. Aegidio iuxta illos cum magna gente. Mira-  
bantur ergo nostri valde vnde esset exorta tanta multi-  
50 tudo Turcorum et Arabum et Saracenorum et aliorum  
quos enumerare ignoro; quia pene omnes montes, colles,  
valles et omnia plana loca intus et extra vndique erant  
cooperta de illa excommunicata generatione. Factus est  
itaque sermo secretus inter nos laudantes et consulentes

28 et iaculando *HaR* om. ac spiculando *CER* 29  
quamquam *Ha*: om. quanquam *CER* 31 pertulimus illic *E*  
32 nostrae illa *CE* maximo refugio *HaR* 34 forsitan  
semper *Ha* 36 om. egregio *BC* comite scilicet *ER* 37 om.  
inclito *BCER* et Hugoni *HaR* 37-38 om. honestissimo *BCER*  
39 quod festinent *CER* 40-44 om. Qui omnimodo . . .  
praeliari nobiscum *BCE* 46 episcopus vero *C* 48 cum magna  
gente iuxta illa *C* 49 om. valde *C* 50 Turcorum Arabum *C*  
50-51 om. aliorum quos *CE* 51-52 montes et colles et  
valles *HaR* 52 montes et colles *E* 54 nos et *ER*



atque dicentes: 'Estote omnino unanimes in fide 55  
Christi et S. Crucis vexilli victoria, quia hodie omnes  
diuites, si Deo placet, effecti eritis.' Continuo fuerunt  
ordinatae nostrorum acies. In sinistra parte fuit  
vir sapiens Boamundus et Rotbertus Nortmannus et  
prudens Tancredus ac honestissimus miles Rotbertus de 60  
Ansa et inclitus Richardus de Principatu. Episcopus  
vero Podiensis venit per alteram montaneam, vndique  
circumcingens incredulos Turcos. In sinistra quoque  
parte equitavit fortissimus miles Raimundus comes de  
S. Aegidio. In dextera vero parte fuit honorabilis dux 65  
Godefridus et acerrimus miles Flandrensis comes et  
Hugo Magnus, et alii plures, quorum nomina ignoro.  
Statim autem venientibus militibus nostris, Turci et  
Arabes et Saraceni et Agulani, et omnes barbarae  
nationes dederunt velociter fugam, per compendia 70  
montium et per plana loca. Erat autem numerus Turco-  
rum, Persarum, Publicanorum, Saracenorum, Angulano-  
rum aliorumque paganorum, trecenta sexaginta millia,  
extra Arabes, quorum numerum nemo scit nisi solus  
Deus. Fugerunt vero nimis velociter ad sua tentoria, 75  
ibique eos diu morari non licuit. Iterum vero arripuerunt  
fugam, nosque illos persecuti sumus occidentes tota vna  
die. Et accepimus spolia multa: aurum, argentum,  
equos et asinos, camelos, oves et boues et plurima alia  
quae ignoramus. Et nisi Dominus fuisset nobiscum in 80  
bello et aliam cito nobis misisset aciem, nullus nostro-  
rum euasisset, quia ab hora tertia vsque in horam nonam  
perduravit haec pugna. Sed omnipotens Deus, pius et

56 *om.* vexilli BCE      57 *erimus* C      59 comesque nor-  
mannie Robertus CER      60 *om.* honestissimus miles  
BCER      61 *om.* inclitus BCER      63 circumcingentes CE  
*om.* quoque R      65 *om.* honorabilis BCER      69 *om.* et omnes  
ER      75 fugerunt igitur ER      *om.* velociter CE      77  
occidendo CER      79 equos asinos CER      82 usque ad C



misericors, qui non permisit suos milites perire nec in ma-  
 85 nus inimicorum incidere, festine nobis adiutorium misit.  
 Sed fuerunt illic mortui duo ex nostris milites honorabiles,  
 scilicet Gosfredus de monte Scabioso et Wilhelmus  
 Marchisi filius frater Tancredi, aliique milites et pedites,  
 quorum nomina ignoro. Quis vnquam tam sapiens aut  
 90 doctus vir audebit describere prudentiam militiamque et  
 fortitudinem Turcorum? Qui putabant terrere gentem  
 Francorum minis suarum sagittarum, sicut terruerunt  
 Arabes, Saracenos et Hermenios, Suranios et Graecos?  
 Sed, si Deo placet, nunquam tantum valebunt quantum  
 95 nostri. Veruntamen dicunt se esse de Francorum  
 generatione et quia nullus homo naturaliter debet esse  
 miles nisi Franci et illi. Veritatem dicam, quam nemo  
 audebit prohibere. Certe, si in fide Christi et Christiani-  
 tate sancta semper firmi fuissent et vnum Dominum  
 100 in trinitate confiteri voluissent, Deique Filium natum de  
 Virgine matre, passum, resurgentem a mortuis tertia die  
 et in coelum suis cernentibus discipulis ascendentem, ac  
 deinde consolationem Sancti Spiritus perfecte mittentem  
 et eum in coelo et in terra regnantem, recta mente et fide  
 105 credidissent, ipsis potentiores vel fortiores vel bellorum  
 ingeniosissimos nullus inuenire potuisset; et tamen  
 gratia Dei victi sunt a nostris. Hoc bellum est factum  
 primo die Iulii.

## EXPLICIT LIBER TERTIVS

86 *om. ex nostris ER*      87 Gosfridus . . . Scobioso C    Gode-  
 fredus *ER*: Godefridus *Ha*      90 *om. vir HaR militiam et*  
*HaR*      98 prohibere potest: *om. audebit ER*      99 *om.*  
*semper C*      101 *om. matre ER*      et resurgentem  
*Ha resurrexisse codd. R*      *om. tertia die HaR*      102 ascen-  
 disse suis cernentibus discipulis *codd. R*      102-103 *om. ac*  
 deinde *codd. R*      103 consolationemque *BER*      misisse *codd. R*  
 105 ipsi *E*: etiam ipsis *C*      et fortiores *CER*      109 *om. Ex-*  
 plicit . . . Tertius *Ha*



## INCIPIIT LIBER QUARTVS

**X.** Postquam vero Turci, inimici Dei et sanctae 1097  
Christianitatis, omnino fuerunt deuicti, per quatuor dies  
et noctes fugientes huc et illuc, contigit vt Solimanus  
dux illorum, filius Solimani veteris, fugeret de Nicea,  
qui inuenit decem millia Arabum, qui dixerunt ei: ' O 5  
infelix, et infelicior omnibus gentilibus, cur tremefactus  
fugis ? ' Quibus Solimanus lacrymans respondit : ' Quo-  
niam olim cum habuissem omnes Francos deuictos,  
eosque putarem iam in captiuitate ligatos, dum paulatim  
voluisssem ligare adinuicem, tunc respiciens retro, vidi 10  
tam innumerabilem gentem eorum, vt si vos aut ali-  
quis illic adesset, putaret quod omnes montes et colles  
vallesque et omnia plana loca plena essent illorum mul-  
titudine. Nos igitur illos cernentes, statim coepimus  
capere subitaneum iter, timentes tam mirabiliter, vt vix 15  
euaserimus de illorum manibus ; vnde adhuc in nimio  
terrore sumus. Et si mihi et verbis meis velletis credere,  
auferretis vos hinc, quia, si et ipsi potuerint vos solum-  
modo scire, vnus ex vobis vix amplius euadet viuens.'  
At illi audientes talia retrorsum verterunt dorsa et se 20  
expanderunt per vniuersam Romaniam. Tunc venie-  
bamus nos persequentes iniquissimos Turcos, quotidie  
fugientes ante nos. At illi venientes ad cuncta castra  
siue vrbes, fingentes et deludentes habitatores terrarum  
illarum dicebant : ' Nos deuicimus Christianos omnes, et 25  
superauimus illos, ita vt nullus eorum iam vnquam

*Titulus. om. Incipit . . . Quartus Ha*

<b>X. 7</b>	Qui <i>G (Bongars)</i>	lacrimabiliter <i>Ha</i>	12	illuc adesset
<i>C</i>	14 <i>om. statim C</i>	19 <i>vivus HaER</i>	20	diver-
terunt dorsa <i>ER</i>	21	per totam <i>B</i>	26	<i>om. iam unquam B</i>



audeat erigere se ante nos ; tantum permittite nos intus intrare.' Qui intrantes spoliabant ecclesias et domos et alia omnia et ducebant equos secum et asinos et mulos, 30 aurum, argentum et ea quae reperire poterant. Adhuc quoque filios Christianorum secum tollebant et ardebant ac deuastabant omnia conuenientia siue vtilia, fugientes et pauentes valde ante faciem nostram. Nos itaque persequeremur eos per deserta et inaquosa et inhabita- 35 bilem terram, ex qua vix viui euasimus vel exiuius. Fames vero et sitis vndique coartabant nos, nihilque penitus nobis erat ad edendum, nisi forte vellentes et fricantes spicas manibus nostris, tali cibo quam miserime viuebamur. Illic fuit mortua maxima pars no- 40 strorum equorum, eo quod multi eorum remanserunt pedites, et pro penuria equorum erant nobis boues loco caballorum, et pro nimia necessitate succedebant nobis capri et multones ac canes ad portandum. Interea coepimus intrare in terram optimam, plenam corporali- 45 bus alimentis et delitiis omnibusque bonis, ac deinceps appropinquauimus Yconio. Habitatores vero terrae illius suadebant et amonebant nos nobiscum ferre vtres plenos aqua, quia illic, in itinere diei vnus, est maxima penuria aquae. Nos vero ita fecimus donec peruenimus 50 ad quoddam flumen, ibique hospitati sumus per duos dies ; coeperunt autem cursores nostri ante ire, donec peruenerunt ad Erachiam, in qua erat Turcorum nimia congregatio, exspectans et insidians quomodo posset Christi milites nocere et contristare. Quos Turcos Dei 55 omnipotentis milites inuenientes audacter inuaserunt ;

27 contra nos CER      29 om. equos CE      secum asinos C  
 30 aurum et argentum CHaR et (om. B) omnia CER      31 om. quoque B  
 34 desertam CER      inaquosam HaR      36 coartabat C  
 39-40 om. nostrorum R      40 equitum HaR: om. eo quod R  
 44 incepimus B      45 et diuitiis CER ac deinde C  
 47 ut nobiscum ferremus C      49 Nosque ita C  
 venimus B      54 militibus CER      om. et contristare codd. R



superati itaque sunt inimici nostri in illa die ; tamque  
celeriter fugiebant, quam sagitta fugit emissa ictu valido  
cordae et arcus ; nostri igitur intrauerunt statim in  
ciuitatem, ibique mansimus per quatuor dies. Illic  
diuisit se ab aliis Tancredus, Marchisi filius, et Balduinus 60  
comes egregius, frater ducis Godefridi ; simulque intra-  
uerunt vallem de Botrenthrot. Diuisit quoque se Tan-  
credus et venit Tarsum solummodo cum suis militibus.  
Exierunt denique Turci de vrbe et venerunt obuiam eis  
atque in vnum congregati properauerunt ad bellum 65  
contra Christianos. Appropinquantibus itaque nostris  
et pugnantibus, dederunt inimici nostri fugam, reuer-  
tentes in urbem celeri gressu. Tancredus vero, vir pru-  
dens atque honorabilis miles Christi, peruenit laxatis  
loris et castrametatus est ante portam vrbis. Ex alia 70  
igitur parte venit vir inclytus comes Balduinus cum suo  
exercitu, postulans et depraecans Tancredum, acerrimum  
militem, quatinus eum amicissime in societatem ciuitatis  
dignaretur suscipere. Cui ait Tancredus : ‘ Te omnimodo  
in hac societate denego.’ Nocte itaque superueniente, 75  
omnes Turci tremefacti fugam vna arripuerunt. Exie-  
runt itaque habitatores ciuitatis sub illa noctis obscuri-  
tate, clamantes excelsa voce : ‘ Currite, inuictissimi  
Franci, currite ! Quia Turci expergefacti vestro timore  
omnes pariter recederunt.’ Orta autem die, venerunt 80  
maiores ciuitatis et reddiderunt sponte ciuitatem, di-  
centes illis qui super hoc litigabant adinuicem : ‘ Sinite  
modo, seniores, sinite ! Quia volumus et petimus domi-

58 corda et ictu *C* chorda et arcu *ER* 60 *om.* ab aliis *E*  
61 *om.* egregius *codd. R* 63 *om.* solummodo *codd. R*  
65 venerunt ad *ER* : inierunt (*om.* ad) *C* : praepaverunt se  
*Tud* 67 repugnantibus *ER* 68 celeri cursu *C*  
68-69 *om.* vir prudens atque honorabilis *codd. R* 72 *om.*  
et depraecans *codd. R* 72-73 *om.* acerrimum militem *codd. R*  
74 omnino *B* 76-77 exierunt denique *HaR* 77 sub  
ipsa *C* 80 recesserunt *ER* : recedunt *Ha Tud.*



nari et regnare super nos illum qui heri tam viriliter  
 85 pugnauit cum Turcis.' Balduinus itaque, mirificus comes,  
 altercabatur et litigabat cum Tancredo, dicens: 'Intre-  
 mus simul et spoliemus ciuitatem; et qui plus potuerit  
 habere, habeat; et qui poterit capere, capiat.' Cui  
 obstans fortissimus Tancredus dixit: 'Absit hoc a me;  
 90 ego namque Christianos nolo exspoliare; homines istius  
 ciuitatis elegerunt me dominum super se, meque habere  
 desiderant.' Tandem nequiuit vir fortis diu luctari cum  
 Balduino doctissimo comite, quia illi magnus erat exer-  
 citus; tamen volens nolensque dimisit eam et viriliter  
 95 recessit cum suo exercitu; fueruntque ei statim traditae  
 duae optimae ciuitates, videlicet Athena et Manustra,  
 et plurima castra.

1097 **XI.** Maior vero exercitus, scilicet Raimundus comes  
 de S. Aegidio et doctissimus Boamundus duxque Gode-  
 fridus et alii principes, in Hermeniorum intrauerunt  
 terram, sitientes atque aestuantes Turcorum sanguinem.  
 5 Tandem peruenerunt ad quoddam castrum quod tam  
 forte erat, vt nihil ei possent facere. Erat autem ibi  
 homo quidam nomine Symeon, qui in illa ortus fuit  
 regione, quique hanc petiit terram, quo eam de manibus  
 defenderet Turcorum inimicorum; cui sponte illi dede-  
 10 runt terram, quique remansit ibi cum sua gente. Nos  
 denique exeuntes inde peruenimus feliciter vsque  
 Caesaream Cappadociae; a Cappadocia autem egressi  
 venimus ad quandam ciuitatem pulcerrimam et nimis

86 altercabat *E* 87-88 quis plus poterit capere capere  
 capiat (*sic*) *C* 89 *om.* obstans *codd.* *R* Tancredus ait *ER*  
 89-90 *om.* hoc . . . exspoliare *ER* 90-91 illius civitatis *ER*:  
 huius civ. *CHa*: istius civ. *Tud* 91 habere dominum *ER* 92  
 vir fortis (fortissimus *C*) Tancredus *HaR* 93 *om.* doctissimo  
*codd.* *R* 94 et volens *C* *om.* viriliter *C*  
**XI.** 3 alii plures *codd.* *R* 7 ortus fuerat *CER* 8 qui  
 eam *C* 9-10 sponte tradiderunt illam remansitque *C*  
 11 usque ad *codd.* *R*



vberrimam, quam paululum ante nostrum aduentum obsederant Turci per tres hebdomadas, sed non supera- 15 uerant ; mox illuc aduenientibus nobis continuo tradidit se in manu nostra cum magna laetitia. Hanc igitur petiit quidam miles, cui nomen Petrus de Alpibus, ab omnibus senioribus, quatinus eam defenderet in fidelitate Dei et S. Sepulcri et seniorum atque imperatoris, cui 20 cum nimio amore gratis concesserunt eam. Sequenti nocte audiuit Boamundus quod Turci qui fuerant in obsessione ciuitatis frequenter praecederent nos ; extemplo praeparauit se solummodo cum militibus, quatinus illos vndique expugnaret ; sed eos inuenire non 25 potuit. Deinde venimus ad quandam urbem nomine Coxon, in qua erat maxima vbertas omnium bonorum, quae nobis erant necessaria. Christiani igitur, videlicet alumni vrbis illius, reddiderunt se statim ; nosque fuimus ibi optime per tres dies, et illic maxime sunt 30 recuperati nostri. Audiens itaque Raimundus comes de S. Aegidio quod Turci qui erant in custodia Antiochiae discessissent, in suo inuenit consilio quod mitteret illuc aliquos ex suis militibus qui eam diligenter custodirent. Tandem elegit illos quos legare voluit, videlicet Petrum 35 de Castellione vicecomitem, Wilhelmum de Monte Pislerio, Petrum de Roasa, Petrum Reimundum de Pul, cum quingentis militibus. Venerunt itaque in vallem prope Antiochiam ad quoddam castrum Publicanorum ; illicque audierunt Turcos esse in ciuitate, eamque fortiter 40 defendere praeparabant. Petrus de Roasa diuisit se ibi

14 paulo C    16 mox vero illic C    etiam continuo C    19 ut eam C    fidelitatem C    20 om. Dei et C    23 obsidione ER  
eiusdem civitatem C    23-24 extemplo Ha : moxque C : mox BER  
24 cum suis C    24-25 sed illos HaR    31 recuperati nostrorum  
multi ER    Audiens autem C : igitur ER    31-32 om. de S.  
Aegidio BC    33 mitteret illic C    35 Et elegit C : elegerunt  
E    legare volebat EHa    38 itaque hii C    40 eam  
fortiter C    41 properabant ER : preparatos C



ab aliis, et proxima nocte transiuit prope Antiochiam,  
 intrauitque vallem de Rugia, et inuenit Turcos et  
 Saracenos et praeliatus est cum eis et occidit multos  
 45 ex eis et alios persecutus est valde. Videntes hoc  
 Hermenii habitatores terrae illius, illum fortiter superasse  
 paganos, continuo reddiderunt se. Ipse vero statim  
 coepit Rusam ciuitatem et plurima castra. Nos autem  
 qui remansimus, exeuntes inde intrauimus in diabolicam  
 50 montanam, quae tam erat alta et angusta, vt nullus  
 nostrorum auderet per semitam quae in monte patebat  
 alium praeire. Illic praecipitabant se equi et vnus  
 saumarius praecipitabat alium. Milites ergo stabant  
 vndique tristes, feriebant se manibus prae nimia tristitia  
 55 et dolore, dubitantes quid facerent de semetipsis et de  
 suis armis, vendentes suos clipeos et loricas optimas  
 cum galeis solummodo propter tres aut quinque de-  
 narios vel pro vt quisque poterat habere. Qui autem  
 vendere nequibant, gratis a se iactabant et ibant.  
 60 Exeuntes igitur de execrata montana peruenimus ad  
 ciuitatem quae vocatur Marasi. Cultores vero illius  
 ciuitatis exierunt obuiam nobis laetantes et deferentes  
 maximum mercatum ; illicque habuimus omnem copiam,  
 exspectando donec veniret dominus Boamundus. Vene-  
 65 runt itaque nostri milites in vallem in qua regalis  
 ciuitas Antiochia sita est, quae est caput totius Syriae,  
 quamque Dominus Iesus Christus tradidit beato Petro  
 Apostolorum principi, quatinus eam ad cultum sanctae  
 fidei reuocaret, qui viuit et regnat cum Deo Patre in  
 70 vnitate Spiritus S. Deus per omnia secula seculorum.  
 Amen.

42 transiuit ante C om. prope E 46 illum scilicet CER 48  
 om. Rusam G (Bongars) 49 euntes ER 52 ante alium HaR  
 54 feriebantque C 56 vendebant autem C : ergo ER 58  
 qui vero C 60 execrabili C 61 Marasim CHaR 64 exspec-  
 tantes C 67 om. Christus ER 70 om. Deus ER



**XII.** Cum coepissemus appropinquare ad pontem 1097  
 Farreum, cursores nostri, qui semper solebant nos prae-  
 cedere, inuenerunt Turcos innumerabiles congregatos  
 obuiam eis, qui dare adiutorium Antiochiae festinabant.  
 Irruentes igitur nostri vno corde et mente super illos, 5  
 superaauerunt Turcos. Consternati sunt barbari, dede-  
 runtque fugam, et multi mortui sunt ex eis in ipso  
 certamine. Nostri igitur superantes illos, Dei gratia,  
 acceperunt spolia multa, equos, camelos, mulos, asinos  
 onustos frumento et vino. Venientes denique nostri, 10  
 castrametati sunt super ripam fluminis. Protinus vir  
 sapiens Boamundus cum quatuor millibus militum venit  
 ante portam ciuitatis vigilare, si forte aliquis nocte  
 latenter exiret aut intraret ciuitatem. Crastina vero  
 die peruenerunt usque Antiochiam media die, in quarta 15  
 feria, quae est duodecima Kal. Nou., et obsedimus mira-  
 biliter tres portas ciuitatis, quoniam in alia parte de-  
 erat nobis locus obsidendi, quia alta et nimis angusta  
 montanea nos coartabat. Tantum autem timebant nos  
 vndique inimici nostri Turci, qui erant intus in vrbe, vt 20  
 nemo eorum auderet offendere aliquem ex nostris fere  
 per spacium dierum quindecim. Mox hospitantes nos  
 circa Antiochiam reperimus illic omnem abundantiam,  
 videlicet vineas vndique plenas, foueas plenas frumento,  
 arbores refertas pomis, et alia multa bona corporibus 25  
 vtilia. Hermenii et Suriani qui erant intus in vrbe,  
 exeuntes et ostendentes sese fugere, cotidie erant nobis-  
 cum, sed eorum vxores in ciuitate. Illi vero ingeniose  
 inuestigabant nostrum esse nostramque qualitatem,  
 referebantque omnia his excommunicatis qui erant in 30

**XII.** 1 Cumque CER    2 ferreum ER    6 consternatique C  
 7 ex illis C    13 om. nocte ER    14 exiret vel C    15 usque ad  
 HaR    21 nemo illorum audebat C    ex nobis E    24 om.  
 videlicet C    27 et simulantes C    qui quotidie ER : etiam coti-  
 die C    28 uxores eorum remanserant C    30 hiis C    om.  
 excommunicatis BCE    om. erant Ha



vrbe inclusi. Postquam vero Turci fuerunt edocti de  
 nostra essentia, coeperunt paulatim vrbe exire, nostros  
 peregrinos vndique coangustare, non solum ex vna  
 parte, sed vndique erant latentes obuam nobis ad mare  
 35 et ad montaneam. Erat autem non longe castrum cui  
 nomen Aregh, vbi erant congregati multi Turci fortis-  
 simi, qui frequenter conturbabant nostros. Audientes  
 itaque nostri seniores talia, nimis doluerunt, miseruntque  
 ex militibus suis, qui diligenter explorarent locum vbi  
 40 erant Turci; reperto igitur loco vbi latebant, nostri  
 milites, qui quaerebant illos, obuiant eis. At nostris  
 paulatim retrogredientibus vbi sciebant Boamundum  
 esse cum suo exercitu, statim fuerunt illic mortui duo  
 ex nostris. Hoc audiens Boamundus, surrexit cum suis  
 45 vt fortissimus Christi athleta, et barbari irruerunt contra  
 illos, eo quod nostri erant pauci; tamen simul iuncti  
 inierunt bellum. Mortui sunt vero multi ex nostris  
 inimicis et capti alii ducti sunt ante portam vrbis,  
 ibique decollabantur, vt magis tristes fierent qui erant  
 50 in vrbe. Exhibant quidem alii de ciuitate et descende-  
 bant in quandam portam et sagittabant nos ita vt  
 sagittae eorum caderent in domini Boamundi plateam,  
 et vna mulier occubuit ictu sagittae.

1097 **XIII.** Congregati itaque sunt omnes maiores nostri et  
 ordinauerunt consilium, dicentes: 'Faciamus castrum in  
 vertice montis Maregart, qui mons est super hostem  
 Boamundi, quod securiat, vt tuti possimus permanere

31 conclusi *ER* om. vero *C* om. edocti *E* 32 de urbe  
*HaR* nostrosque *HaR* 34 om. erant *C* obuiantesque *C*  
 et ad *C* 35 Erant autem *BER* 36 arech *C* 38 misere-  
 que *C* 45-46 super illos *C* 46 om. erant *C* pauci essent *C*  
 om. tamen *C* simulque *C* 49 decollati *C* ut inde magis *C*  
 50 quidam alii *C* 50-51 ascendebant *HaR* 53 unam  
 mulierem occiderent *ER* om. ictu sagittae *ER*  
**XIII. 3** Margaret *ER* 3-4 om. qui mons... Boamundi *codd. R*  
 4 quo securi atque tuti *Ha* possimus esse a *codd. R*



de Turcorum formidine.' Facto itaque castro atque 5  
 munito, omnes maiores illud invicem custodiebant. Iam-  
 iam coeperant frumentum et omnia nutrimenta cor-  
 porum nimis esse cara ante Natale Domini. Foras  
 penitus non audebamus exire nihilque penitus in terra  
 Christianorum inuenire poteramus ad edendum. In 10  
 Saracenorum namque terra nemo intrare audebat nisi  
 cum magna gente. Ad vltimum statuerunt nostri  
 seniores concilium, ordinando qualiter regerent tantas  
 gentes. Inuenerunt in consilio, vt vna pars nostri iret  
 diligenter attrahere stipendium et vbique custodire 15  
 exercitum; alia quoque pars fiducialiter remaneret  
 custodire hostem. Boamundus denique dixit: 'Seniores  
 et prudentissimi milites, si vultis, et honestum et bonum  
 vobis videtur, ego ero cum Flandrensi comite iturus  
 cum eo.' Celebratis itaque gloriosissime solennitatibus 20  
 Natiuitatis, die lunae, secunda scilicet feria, egressi sunt  
 illi et alii plusquam viginti millia militum et peditum,  
 ac sani et incolumes intrauerunt terram Saracenorum.  
 Congregati quippe erant multi Turci et Arabes et Sara-  
 ceni ab Hierusalem et Damasco et Aleph et ab aliis 25  
 regionibus, qui veniebant fortitudinem Antiochiae dare.  
 Audientes itaque isti Christianorum gentem conductam  
 esse in illorum terram, illico praeparauerunt se ad bellum  
 contra Christianos, atque summo diluculo venerunt in  
 locum, vbi gens nostra erat in vnum. Diuiseruntque 30  
 se barbari et fecerunt duas acies, vnam ante et aliam  
 retro, cupientes ex omni parte circumcingere nos.  
 Egregius itaque comes Flandrensis, vndique regimine  
 fidei signoque crucis, quam fideliter cotidie baiulabat,  
 armatus, occurrit illis vna cum Boamundo, irruerunt- 35

5 facto igitur C: factum est ergo castrum atque munitum  
 omnesque ER 6-7 iamiamque B 8 nimis nostris ER 11  
 terram B 13 ordinantes C 14 et invenerunt C 16 alia vero  
 C 18 om. et honestum codd. R 21 in die Ha om. lunae ER  
 secundo ER



que nostri vnanimiter super illos, qui statim arripuerunt  
fugam et festinanter verterunt retro scapulas ; ac mortui  
sunt ex illis plurimi, nostrique coeperunt equos eorum  
et alia spolia ; alii vero qui viui remanserant, velociter  
40 fugerunt et in iram perditionis abierunt. Nos autem  
reuertentes cum magno tripudio, laudauimus et magni-  
ficauimus trinum et vnum Deum, qui viuit et regnat  
nunc et in aeuum. Amen.

1097 **XIIII.** Turci denique, inimici Dei et Christianitatis, qui  
erant intus in custodia ciuitatis Antiochiae, audientes  
dominum Boamundum et Flandrensem comitem in  
obsessione non esse, exierunt ciuitate et audacter venie-  
5 bant praeliari nobiscum, insidiantes vndique in qua parte  
obsidio esset languidior, scientes illos prudentissimos  
milites foris esse, inueneruntque quod in vna Martis die  
possent obsistere nobis et laedere. Venerunt vero iniquis-  
simi barbari caute et irruerunt vehementer super nos  
10 et incautos occiderunt multos ex nostris militibus et  
peditibus. Episcopus quoque Podiensis in illa amara  
die perdidit suum senescalcum, conducentem et regentem  
eius vexillum. Et nisi esset flumen, quod inter nos et  
illos erat, saepius inuasissent nos, atque maximam  
15 laesionem fecissent in nostram gentem.

1098 Egrediebatur tunc vir prudens Boamundus cum exerci-  
tu suo de terra Saracenorum venitque in Tancredi monta-  
neam, cogitans an forte ibi valeret inuenire aliquid quod  
potuisset deferri, nam totam terram in expendio miserant ;  
20 alii quippe inuenerant, alii vero vacui redierant. Tunc  
vir sapiens Boamundus increpauit eos dicens : ‘ O infelix

40 aufugerunt C et viam C  
**XIIII.** 1 sanctae Christianitatis CHa 2 om. civitatis B 4  
obsidione C exhibant C de civitate HaR 6 om. illos BCE  
8 Venerunt itaque C : quoque ER 8-9 nequissimi C 9  
barbari nocte CER om. vehementer C 11 Episcopus vero C  
13 suum vexillum CHaR 17-18 cogitans si C 19-20 alii  
quidem C



et miserrima gens, O vilissima omnium Christianorum !  
 Cur tam celeriter vultis abire ? Sinite modo, sinite,  
 vsquequo erimus congregati in vnum, et nolite errare  
 sicut oues non habentes pastorem. Si autem inimici 25  
 nostri inuenerint vos errantes, occident vos, quia die  
 noctuque vigilant, vt vos sine ductore segregatos vel  
 solos inueniant, vosque cotidie occidere et in captiui-  
 tatem ducere laborant.' Cumque finis esset dictis, rediit  
 ad suam hostem cum suis plus vacuis quam onustis. 30  
 Videntes autem Hermenii et Surani quod nostri penitus  
 vacui rediissent, consiliati in vnum abibant per mon-  
 taneas et praescita loca, subtiliter inquirentes et ementes  
 frumentum et corporea alimenta, quae ad hostem de-  
 ferebant, in quo erat fames immensa, et vendebant onus 35  
 vnus asini octo purpuratis, qui appraeciabantur centum  
 viginti solidis denariorum. Ibi quidem sunt mortui  
 multi ex nostris, non habentes praecium vnde tam carum  
 emere potuissent.

**XV.** Wilhelmus igitur Carpentarius et Petrus here- 1098  
 mita pro immensa infelicitate ac miseria ipsa latenter  
 recesserunt. Quos Tancredus persequens apprehendit  
 secumque reduxit cum dedecore, qui dextram et fidem  
 illi dederunt, quia libenter ad hostem redirent et satis- 5  
 factionem senioribus facerent. Tota denique nocte  
 Wilhelmus vti mala res in tenda Boamundi iacuit.  
 Crastina vero die summo diluculo veniens, erubescendo  
 ante Boamundi praesentiam stetit, quem alloquens Boa-  
 mundus dixit : 'O infelix et infamia totius Franciae, 10  
 dedecus et scelus Galliarum ! O nequissime omnium

24 quousque simus C      27 nocteque ER      27-28 sive solos  
 CEHa      30 suam gentem B      32 redissent C      34 et  
 alia corporea C      35 in qua CHaR      38 care C  
**XV.** 2 felicitate E      3 discesserunt C      4 et cum  
 dedecore secum adduxit C      quia dextram BER      5 qui  
 libenter BCER      6 om. nocte E      7 tentorio codd. R



quos terra suffert ! Cur tam turpiter fugisti ? Forsitan  
 ob hoc quod voluisti tradere hos milites et hostem  
 Christi, sicut tradidisti alios in Hispania ? ' Qui omnino  
 15 tacuit et nullus sermo ex eius ore processit. Adunaue-  
 runt sese omnes fere Francigenae, rogaueruntque humi-  
 liter dominum Boamundum, ne deterius ei fieri per-  
 mitteret. Annuit ille sereno vultu, et ait : ' Hoc pro  
 vestri amore libenter consentiam, si in toto corde et  
 20 mente iurauerit, quod nunquam recedet ab Hierosoly-  
 mitano itinere, siue bono siue malo ; et Tancredus neque  
 per se neque per suos aliquid contrarii ei consentiet  
 fieri.' Qui auditis his verbis voluntarie concessit ; ipse  
 vero protinus dimisit eum. Postmodum vero Carpen-  
 25 tarius, maxima captus turpitudine, non diu morans,  
 furtim recessit. Hanc paupertatem et miseriam pro  
 nostris delictis concessit nos habere Deus. In tota nam-  
 que hoste non valebat aliquis inuenire mille milites qui  
 equos haberent optimos.

1098 **XVI.** Interea inimicus Tetigus, audiens quod exercitus  
 Turcorum venissent super nos, ait se timuisse, arbi-  
 transque nos omnes perisse, atque in manibus inimicorum  
 incidisse, fingens omnia falsa quae assidue cismare  
 5 poterat, dixit : ' Seniores et viri prudentissimi, videte  
 quia nos hic sumus in maxima necessitate et ex nulla  
 parte nobis adiutorium succedit. Ecce modo sinite me  
 in Romaniae patriam reuerti, et ego absque vlla dubita-  
 tione faciam multas naues huc venire per mare, onustas

12 fugiebas C	13 quia volebas C	et gentem B	14
sicut olim C	15 nullusque C	17 ei aliquid C	facere E
19 si mihi toto corde CHa	22 om. contrarii C	consensit C	
24 Boamundus igitur protinus C	25-26 moratas (sic) laten-		
ter aufugit C	27 nobis C	29 habuissent ER	haberent C
<b>XVI.</b> 3 manus C	4-5 om. quae . . . poterat BCER:	assi-	
due seminare HaTnd	5 videtis C	6 om. hic E	magna
necessitate C	a nulla nobis parte ER	7 sed modo C	
8 Romaniam C			



frumento, vino, hordeo, carne, farina et caseis, omni- 10  
 busque bonis, quae sunt nobis necessaria. Faciam et  
 equos conduci ad vendendum, et mercatum per terram  
 in fidelitate imperatoris huc aduenire faciam. Ecce haec  
 omnia vobis fideliter iurabo et attendam. Adhuc quoque  
 et domestici mei et papilio meus sunt in campo, vnde 15  
 et firmiter credite, quia quantocius redibo.' Sic itaque  
 fecit finem dictis. Iuit ille inimicus; omnia sua dimisit  
 in campo, et in periurio manet et manebit. Itaque tali  
 modo inerat nobis maxima necessitas, quia Turci vndique  
 praestringebant nos, ita vt nullus nostrorum auderet iam 20  
 exire extra tentoria, nam illi constringebant nos ex vna  
 parte et fames cruciabat ex alia, succursus vero et  
 adiutorium nobis deerat. Gens minuta et pauperrima  
 fugiebat Cyprum, Romaniam et in montaneas. Ad  
 mare vtique non audebamus ire propter timorem pessi- 25  
 morum Turcorum, nusquam erat nobis via patefacta.

**XVII.** Itaque audiens dominus Boamundus innumera- 1098  
 bilem gentem Turcorum venientem super nos, caute  
 venit ad alios, dicens: 'Seniores et prudentissimi milites,  
 quid facturi erimus? Nos namque tanti non sumus, vt  
 in duabus partibus pugnare valeamus. Sed scitis quid 5  
 faciemus? Faciamus ex nobis duas partes. Pars pedi-  
 tum remaneat iugiter custodire papiliones et quibit  
 nimis obsistere his qui in ciuitate sunt. Alia vero pars  
 militum nobiscum veniat obuiam inimicis nostris, qui  
 hic hospitati sunt prope nos, in castello Areg, vltra 10  
 pontem Farreum.' Sero autem facto, exiit e tentoriis vir  
 prudens Boamundus cum aliis prudentissimis militibus,

13 om. faciam ER      15 omnis sunt E      17 fecerunt  
 finem G (Bongars)      Fugit ille B      et omnia Ha      20 per-  
 stringebant BER: constringebant CHaTud      iam audebat C  
 25 mare itaque ER      om. utique C  
**XVII. 2** Turcorum gentem venire C      4 qui facturi sumus C  
 8 satis obsistere hiis C      10 hospitati se C      Arech C: Areth  
 ER      Ferreum ER      exivit C      11-12 prudens vir C



iuitque iacere inter fluuium et lacum. Summo diluculo,  
iussit protinus exploratores exire et videre quot sint  
15 Turcorum turmae et vbi sint aut certe quid agant.  
Exierunt illi coeperuntque subtiliter inquirere vbi es-  
sent acies Turcorum reconditae. Viderunt namque Tur-  
cos innumerabiles segregatos venire ex parte fluminis  
diuisos per duas acies, maxima vero virtus illorum  
20 veniebat retro. Reuersi sunt namque celeriter specula-  
tores, dicentes: 'Ecce, ecce, veniunt. Igitur estote  
omnes parati, quia iam prope nos sunt.' Dixitque vir  
sapiens Boamundus aliis: 'Seniores et inuictissimi milites,  
ordinate adinuicem bellum.' Responderuntque illi: 'Tu  
25 sapiens et prudens, tu magnus et magnificus, tu fortis  
et victor, tu bellorum arbiter et certaminum iudex, hoc  
totum fac, hoc totum super te sit. Omne bonum quod  
tibi videtur, nobis et tibi operare et fac.' Tunc Boa-  
mundus iussit, vt principum quisque per se dirigeret  
30 aciem suam ordinatim. Feceruntque ita, et ordinatae  
sunt sex acies. Quinque vero ex eis ierunt adunatim  
inuadere illos. Boamundus itaque paulatim gradiebatur  
retro cum sua acie. Iunctis igitur prospere nostris, vnus  
cominus percutiebat alium. Clamor vero resonabat ad  
35 coelum. Omnes praeliabantur in simul. Imbres telorum  
obnubilabant aerem. Postquam venit maxima virtus  
illorum quae erat retro, acriter inuasit nostros, ita vt  
nostri paululum iam cederent retro. Quod vt vidit vir  
doctissimus Boamundus, ingemuit. Tunc praecepit suo

13 flumen <i>Ha</i>	Sumo autem <i>C</i>	14 om. protinus <i>C</i>	quot
sunt <i>CHaR</i>	15 aut ubi <i>ER</i>	16 et coeperunt <i>CHaR</i>	17
acies eorum <i>ER</i>	viderunt tandem <i>CHaR</i>	19 in duas <i>C</i>	
20 sunt itaque <i>C</i>	20-21 exploratores <i>C</i>	21 ecce	
assunt <i>C</i>	24 responderunt <i>C</i>	29 unusquisque principum	
<i>HaR</i> militum principum <i>C</i>	30 ordinate <i>C</i>	31 Quinque	
ex <i>C</i> ierunt ordinate <i>C</i>	32 Boamundus autem <i>C</i>		
34 alterum <i>B</i>	35 invicem. Ymbres <i>C</i>	36 postquam	
vero <i>C</i>	37 qui erant <i>C</i> tam acriter <i>C</i>	om. ita <i>C</i>	38
paulatim <i>CER</i>	om. vir <i>ER</i>		



conostabili, scilicet Rotberto filio Girardi, dicens : ' Vade <sup>40</sup>  
 quam citius potes, vt vir fortis, et recordare prudentium  
 antiquorumque nostrorum fortium parentum, et esto  
 acer in adiutorium Dei Sanctique Sepulcri. Et reuera  
 scias, quia hoc bellum carnale non est, sed spirituale.  
 Esto igitur fortissimus athleta Christi. Vade in pace, <sup>45</sup>  
 Dominus sit tecum vbique.' Fuit itaque ille vndique  
 signo crucis munitus ; qualiter leo perpessus famem per  
 tres aut quatuor dies, qui exiens a suis cauernis, rugiens  
 et sitiens sanguinem pecudum, sic improuide ruit ille  
 inter agmina gregum, dilanians oues fugientes huc et <sup>50</sup>  
 illuc, ita agebat iste inter agmina Turcorum. Tam  
 vehementer instabat illis, vt linguae honorabilis vexilli  
 volitarent super Turcorum capita. Videntes autem aliae  
 acies quod vexillum Boamundi tam honeste esset ante  
 alios delatum, ilico redierunt retrorsum ; nostrique vna- <sup>55</sup>  
 nimiter inuaserunt Turcos, qui omnes stupefacti, arri-  
 puerunt fugam. Nostri itaque persecuti sunt illos et  
 detruncauerunt, vsque ad pontem Farreum. Reuersi  
 sunt autem Turci festinanter in castrum suum, acce-  
 peruntque omnia quae ibi reperire potuerunt, totumque <sup>60</sup>  
 castrum spoliauerunt, miseruntque ignem et fugerunt.  
 Hermenii et Suriani scientes Turcos omnino perdidisse  
 bellum, exierunt et excubauerunt per arta loca et occi-  
 derunt et apprehenderunt multos ex eis. Superati sunt  
 itaque, Deo annuente, in illo die inimici nostri. Satis <sup>65</sup>

40 conostabili suo C      Geraldus ER : Gyrardi C      41-42  
 om. et recordare . . . parentum codd. R      43 om. Dei B  
 44 quod hoc B      46 om. undique E      49 ac sitiens Ha aut  
 sitiens ER      ac siciens C      sicut improvide HaR      om. ille  
 CE      50 om. fugientes E      51 sic agebat C      51-52 tunc  
 vehementer B      52 om. honorabilis codd. R      53 om. autem E  
 53-54 ceterae acies C      54-55 ante illos ER      55 redierunt  
 retro C      nostri atque C      57 Qui statim C      om. et C  
 58 detruncantes illos C      om. ad C      59 ad castrum C  
 60 ibi invenire C      ac totum CER      62 Hermenii autem C  
 64 om. apprehenderunt ER      65 in illa Ha



vero recuperati sunt nostri de equis et de aliis multis,  
 quae erant illis valde necessaria. Et centum capita  
 mortuorum detulerunt ante portam ciuitatis, vbi legati  
 Ammirati Babyloniae castrametati fuerant, qui mitte-  
 70 bantur senioribus. Illi qui remanserant in tentoriis tota  
 die praeliati sunt cum illis qui erant in ciuitate ante  
 tres portas ciuitatis. Factum est hoc bellum in die  
 Martis ante caput ieiunii, quinto Idus Februarii, fauente  
 Domino nostro Iesu Christo, qui cum Patre et Spiritu  
 75 S. viuit et regnat Deus per immortalia secula seculorum.  
 Amen.

1098 **XVIII.** Reuersi sunt nostri, agente Deo, triumphantes  
 et gaudentes de triumpho quem in die illo habuerunt  
 deuictis inimicis, qui sunt per omnia superati, semper  
 fugientes, huc et illuc vagantes et errantes, alii in  
 5 Corrozanam, alii vero in Saracenorum introierunt ter-  
 ram. Videntes autem nostri maiores quod male tracta-  
 rent et constringerent nos inimici nostri, qui erant in  
 ciuitate, die ac nocte inuigilantes et insidiantes qua parte  
 nos laedere possent, congregati in vnum dixerunt :  
 10 ' Priusquam perdamus gentem nostram, faciamus castrum  
 ad Machumariam, quae est ante vrbis portam, vbi pons  
 est ; ibique forsitan nostros poterimus constringere ini-  
 micos.' Consenserunt omnes et laudauerunt quod bonum  
 esset ad faciendum. Comes de S. Aegidio primus dixit :  
 15 ' Estote mihi in adiutorium ad faciendum castrum, et ego  
 muniam et seruabo.' Respondit Boamundus : ' Si vos

66 recuperaverunt *ER* multis rebus *C* 67 neces-  
 sarie *C* 68 occisorum *C* 69 admirati *ER* : admiralii  
*C* 70 ad seniores *C* hii autem *C* 72 om. ciuitatis *C*  
 73 Vo febr. idus *C* regnante *CER* 74 om. nostro *ER* patre  
 etc. *C* 75 om. Deus *B*  
**XVIII.** 2 die illa *C* 3 qui per *C* 5 Corrozanam et *C*  
 om. vero *CE* 7 om. et constringerent *ER* 8 vigilantes *B*  
 11 portam vrbis *HaR* om. vrbis *B* 12 poterimus nostros  
*CHaR* 13 quia bonum *C* 16 muniam et *ER*



vultis et alii seniores laudant, ibo vobiscum ad portum  
 S. Simeonis, diligenter conducere illos qui illic sunt  
 homines, vt peragant hoc opus ; alii qui sunt remansuri  
 muniant se vndique ad defendendum, si forte inimici 20  
 nostri et Dei exierint de ciuitate, et in illo loco sint  
 omnes congregati in vnum, licet vbi nos demonstrare-  
 mus.' Factumque est ita. Comes igitur et Boamundus  
 perrexerunt ad S. Simeonis portum. Nos vero qui  
 remansimus, congregati in vnum, castrum incipiebamus, 25  
 dum Turci praeparauerunt se ilico et exierunt extra  
 ciuitatem obuiam nobis ad proelium. Sic itaque irrue-  
 runt super nos et miserunt nostros in fugam, occiderunt-  
 que plures ex nostris, vnde tristes valde fuimus. Crastina  
 autem die, videntes Turci quod maiores nostri deessent 30  
 et quod praeterita die iuissent ad portum, praeparaue-  
 runt se et ierunt obuiam illis venientibus e portu. Tunc  
 videntes comitem et Boamundum venientes et condu-  
 centes illam gentem, mox coeperunt stridere et garrere ac  
 clamare vehementissimo clamore, circumcingendo vndi- 35  
 que nostros, iaculando, sagittando, vulnerando et crudeli-  
 ter detruncando. Nam tam acriter inuaserunt nostros,  
 vt illi inirent fugam per proximam montaneam et vbi  
 via eundi patebat, qui potuit celeri se gressu expedire,  
 euasit viuus, qui vero fugere nequiuit, mortem suscepit. 40  
 Fueruntque in illa die martyrizati ex nostris militibus

17 *om. et alii ER*      *om. seniores laudant codd. R*      18 con-  
 cedere illos *E*      19 peragant opus *E*      alii vero *C*      20-23 *om.*  
 si forte . . . est ita *codd.*      23 igitur S. Egidii *C*      24 *om.*  
 vero *E* : autem *C*      25-26 incepimus. Turci autem illico pre-  
 parauerunt se *C*      26 quum Turci *ER*      27 prelium,  
 qui irruentes *C*      28 super nos miserunt nos *C*      31 issent *C*  
 ad portam *G (Bongars)*      32 iuerunt *B* : exierunt *ER*  
 a portu *C*      32-33 et videntes *C*      33 *om. venientes*  
 et *C*      34 striderunt et ceperunt garrere *C*      37 *om.*  
 nam *C*      tamque *C*      38 maximam montaneam *Ha*  
 38-39 via fugiendi *C*      39 cursu expedire *C*      41 fuerunt *ER*  
 41-42 *om. militibus seu peditibus ER*



seu peditibus plusquam mille, qui in coelum laetantes  
 ascendebant atque candidati ferentes stolam recepti  
 martyrii, glorificantes et magnificantes Dominum Deum  
 45 nostrum trinum et vnum, in quo feliciter triumphabant,  
 et dicebant concordabili voce: 'Quare non defendis  
 sanguinem nostrum, qui hodie pro tuo nomine effusus  
 est?' Itaque Boamundus viam quam tenuerant, non  
 tenuit; sed celerius cum paucis militibus ad nos venit,  
 50 qui eramus in vnum congregati. Tunc nos accensi occi-  
 sione nostrorum, Christi nomine inuocato, et S. Sepulcri  
 confidentes itinere, iuncti simul peruenimus contra eos  
 ad bellum, eosque inuasimus vno corde et animo.  
 Stabant vero inimici Dei et nostri vndique iam stupe-  
 55 facti et vehementer perterriti, putantes nostros se de-  
 uincere et occidere, sicut fecerant gentem comitis et  
 Boamundi. Sed Deus omnipotens hoc illis non permisit.  
 Milites igitur veri Dei, vndique signo crucis armati,  
 irruerunt acriter super illos et fortiter inuaserunt; illi  
 60 autem celeriter fugerunt per medium angusti pontis ad  
 illorum introitum. Illi qui viui nequiuerunt transire  
 pontem prae nimia multitudine gentium et caballorum,  
 ibi receperunt sempiternum interitum et reddiderunt  
 infelices animas Diabolo et Sathanæ ministris. Nos  
 65 itaque illos superauimus, impellentes in flumen et dei-  
 cientes. Vnda vero rapidi fluminis vndique videbatur  
 fluere rubea Turcorum sanguine. Et si forte aliquis  
 eorum voluisset reptare super pontis columnas, aut

42 mille, qui, ut credimus *HaR* creditur *BC* *om.*  
 in coelum *ER* *om.* laetantes *codd. R* 43-44  
 ascenderunt et candidati stolam martyrii receperunt  
*codd. R* 44-48 *om.* glorificantes... effusus est *codd. R* 48  
 Boamundus autem, *om.* itaque *C* tenuerant alii *C* 50-51  
 pro occisione *C* 52 perreximus *C*: venimus *ER*  
 contra illos *C* 53 eos et *C* 54 Stabant autem *C* 55  
 putabant tamen se nos *C* 61 Tunc qui *C* 63-64  
 interitum cum diabolo et angelis eius *codd. R* 67 sanguine  
 eorum *C*



natando ad terram moliretur exire, vulneratus est a nostris vndique stantibus super fluminis ripam. Rumor 70 quoque et clamor nostrorum et illorum resonabat ad coelum. Pluviae telorum et sagittarum tegebant polum, et claritatem diei; altae voces intus et extra. Mulieres christianae vrbis veniebant ad muri fenestras, spectantes misera fata Turcorum, et occulte plaudebant manibus, 75 sicut mos erat illarum. Hermenii et Suriani, iussu maiorum Turcorum, inuiti seu spontanei, sagittas iaciebant foris ad nos. Mortui sunt etiam in anima et corpore, duodecim Ammiralii de Turcorum agmine in praelio illo, et alii prudentissimorum et fortiorum militum, 80 qui melius ciuitatem pugnando defendebant, numerus quorum fuit mille et quingenti. Alii qui remanserant viui, iam amplius non audebant clamitare vel garrere in die siue in nocte, sicut ante solebant. Omnes itaque nos et illos solummodo separauit nox, noxque diuisit 85 vtrosque in praeliando, iaculando, spiculando, sagittando. Sic superati sunt inimici nostri virtute Dei et S. Sepulcri, et vltius non valuerunt talem virtutem habere neque in voce neque in opere sicuti prius. Nos itaque valde fuimus relecti in illa die de illorum equis, et de 90 aliis multis rebus, quae satis erant nobis necessariae. Crastina vero die, summo diluculo, exierunt alii Turci de ciuitate et collegerunt omnia cadauera fetentia Turcorum mortuorum, quae reperire potuerunt super ripam fluminis, exceptis illis quae in alueo latebant eiusdem 95 fluminis, et sepelierunt ad Machumariam, quae est

70 *om. super ER*      71 *om. et clamor C*      73 *om. altae . . .*  
*extra codd.*      75 *misera facta C*      76 *om. sicut . . . illarum*  
*codd.*      78 *foris ER*      80 *fortium C*      83 *et garrere C*  
84 *die noctuque C: die neque nocte ER: nec die nec nocte B*  
85 *om. nos ER*      *vel illos HaR*      *om. solummodo ER*  
*superavit HaR*      *nox que C*      86 *utraque agmina C*      89  
*sicut prius C*      90-91 *om. de illorum . . . de aliis codd. R*  
91 *necessarie et de equis codd. R*      95-96 *om. exceptis . . .*  
*fluminis C*



ultra pontem ante portam vrbis, simulque illis con-  
 sepelierunt pallia, bizanteos aureos, arcus, sagittas et  
 alia plurima instrumenta, quae nominare nequimus.  
 100 Audientes itaque nostri quod humassent mortuos suos  
 Turci, omnes sese praeparauerunt et venerunt festinantes  
 ad diabolicum atrium et iusserunt desepeliri et frangi  
 tumbas eorum et trahi eos extra sepulcra. Et eiecerunt  
 omnia cadauera eorum in quandam foueam et depor-  
 105 tauerunt caesa capita ad tentoria nostra, quatinus per-  
 fecte sciretur eorum numerus, excepto quod oneraue-  
 rant quatuor equos, qui fuerunt ad mare nuntiis Amiralii  
 de Babylone delata. Quod videntes Turci doluerunt  
 nimis fueruntque tristes vsque ad necem. Nam cotidie  
 110 dolentes, nihil aliud agebant nisi flere et vlulare. Tertia  
 vero die coepimus simul iuncti cum gaudio magno  
 aedificare castrum supradictum, de lapidibus scilicet,  
 quos abstraximus de tumulis Turcorum. Peracto itaque  
 castro, mox coepimus ex omni parte coangustare inimicos  
 115 nostros, quorum superbia ad nihilum iam erat redacta.  
 Nos autem secure ambulabamus huc et illuc, ad portam  
 et ad montaneas, laudantes et glorificantes Dominum  
 Deum nostrum, cui est honor et gloria per omnia secula  
 seculorum. Amen.  
 1098 **XIX.** Iam iam omnes semitae pene prohibitae et  
 incisae vndique erant Turcis, nisi ex illa parte fluminis  
 vbi erat castrum et quoddam monasterium. Quod  
 castrum, si fuisset a nobis perfecte munitum, iam nullus

97-98 cum illis sepelierunt C      99 alia plura C      100 Audi-  
 entes autem C      103 extrahi eos de sepulcris C      iactave-  
 runt C      104 faucam B      105 eorum capita C      106 preter  
 hoc quod C      107-108 nunciis (de nunciis B) Ammiralii  
 (ammirabilii B : admiralii CER) Babyloniae (babilonie C) et  
 miserant ad mare HaR      110 flebant et eiulabant C      111  
 vero post C      113 extraxeramus C      facto ER      igitur ER  
 116 portum HaTud  
**XIX. 1** Iam iamque ER



eorum auderet extra ciuitatis portam exire. Conciliaue- 5  
 runt se denique nostri et vna voce concorditer dixerunt :  
 'Eligamus vnum ex nobis, qui robuste teneat illud  
 castrum et nostris inimicis prohibeat montaneas et  
 plana et introitum vrbis ac exitum.' Plures vero ex illis  
 prohibentes se illud hospitari, nisi forte fuissent multi in 10  
 vnum. Tancredus igitur primus protulit se ante alios,  
 dicens : 'Si scirem quid proficui mihi attigerit, ego  
 sedule cum meis solummodo hominibus corroborarem  
 castrum, et viam per quam inimici nostri solent fre-  
 quentius saeuire viriliter deuetabo illis.' Qui continuo 15  
 spoponderunt ei quater centum marcas argenti. Non  
 adqueuit Tancredus, quamquam solus erat, tamen per-  
 rexit cum suis honestissimis militibus ac seruiantibus,  
 et extemplo abstulit vndique viam et semitam Turcis,  
 ita vt nulli auderent ex eis iam timore eius perterriti 20  
 extra vrbis portam exire, neque propter herbam, neque  
 propter ligna, neque propter vlla necessaria. Remansit  
 vero ibi Tancredus cum suis, coepitque vehementer  
 vbique coangustare ciuitatem. Ipsa quoque die veniebat  
 maxima pars Hermeniorum et Surianorum secure de 25  
 montaneis, qui ferebant alimenta Turcis in adiutorium  
 ciuitatis. Quibus aduenit obuiam Tancredus et apprehen-  
 dit eos et omnia quae deferebant, videlicet frumentum,  
 vinum, hordeum, oleum et alia huiusmodi. Sic itaque  
 robuste et prospere deducebat se Tancredus, iamque 30  
 habebat prohibitas et incisas omnes semitas Turcis,  
 donec Antiochia esset capta. Omnia quae egimus ante-

5-6 consiliaverunt denique se C 9 planas ER om.  
 urbis ER et exitum HaR 9-11 om. Plures . . . unum  
 codd. R 12 attingere ER : contingeret C 15 saeuire illis  
 obstruerem C illi C 17 hiis Tancredus C om.  
 quamquam solus erat codd. R sed tamen C 19 vias codd.  
 R om. et semitam codd. R 20 timore illius C 21  
 urbis portas C 22-23 remansit ergo C 24 om. quoque C  
 31 om. omnes CE 32 capta esset C



quam vrbs esset capta nequeo enarrare, quia nemo  
est in his partibus siue clericus siue laicus qui omnino  
35 possit vel scribere vel narrare sicut res gesta est. Tamen  
aliquantulum dicam.

1098 **XX.** Erat quidam amiratus de genere Turcorum cui  
nomen Pirus, qui maximam amicitiam receperat cum  
Boamundo. Hunc saepe Boamundus pulsabat nuntiis  
adinuicem missis, quo eum infra ciuitatem amicissime  
5 reciperet, eique christianitatem liberius promittebat et  
eum se diuitem facturum cum multo honore mandabat.  
Consensit ille dictis et promissionibus dicens: 'Tres turre  
custodio, eique libenter ipsas promitto, et quacunque  
hora voluerit, in eas eum recolligam.' Erat itaque  
10 Boamundus iam securus de introitu ciuitatis, et gauisus  
serenaque mente, placido vultu venit ad omnes seniores,  
eisque iocunda verba intulit, dicens: 'Viri prudentissimi  
milites, videte quomodo nos omnes in nimia paupertate  
et miseria sumus, maiores siue minores, et ignoramus  
15 penitus, qua parte melius succedat nobis. Igitur si vobis  
bonum et honestum videtur, eligat se ante alios vnus ex  
nobis, vt si aliquo modo vel ingenio ciuitatem acquirere  
vel ingeniare potuerit, per se vel per alios, concordī voce  
ei urbem dono concedamus.' Qui omnino prohibuerunt  
20 et denegarunt, dicentes: 'Nemini dimittetur haec ciuitas,  
sed omnes aequaliter habebimus illam; sicut aequalem  
habuimus laborem, sic inde aequalem habeamus honorem.'  
Itaque Boamundus, auditis his verbis, paulominus  
subridens, protinus recessit. Non multo post audiuius

33 enarrare nequeo *ER* 34 hiis *C* 35 geste sunt *C*  
**XX.** 1 admiratus *ER*: admiralius *C* 3 hunc etenim *ER*  
 4 quod eum *C* in civitate *C*: infra in *ER* 8 *om.* ipsas  
*ER* 8-9 Quod in quacunque hora *ER* 11 et placido *ER*  
 13 *om.* milites *C* videtis quomodo *C* *om.* nos *E* 14 et  
 minores *C* 15 si bonum *C* 17 et si *HaR*: ex nobis qui *C*  
 18 per se et *ER* 18-19 voce urbem *ER* 19 *om.* dono *CER*  
 20 denegauerunt *HaR* 21 habitabimus *C* eam *ER*



nuncios de exercitu hostium nostrorum, Turcorum, 25  
 Publicanorum, Angulanorum, Azimitarum et aliarum  
 plurimarum nationum gentilium, quas numerare neque  
 nominare nescio. Statimque adunauerunt se omnes  
 maiores nostri simul, tenueruntque concilium dicentes :  
 'Quoniam si Boamundus potuerit adquirere ciuitatem aut 30  
 per se aut per alios, nos vna libenti corde vltro ei donamus,  
 eo tenore, vt si imperator venerit nobis in adiutorium et  
 omnem conuentionem sicut promisit nobis et iurauit  
 attendere voluerit, nos ei eam iure reddemus. Sin autem,  
 Boamundus eam in suam habeat potestatem.' Mox 35  
 itaque Boamundus coepit humiliter amicum suum quo-  
 tidiana deprecari petitione, promittendo humillima,  
 maxima et dulcia, in hunc modum : 'Ecce vere tempus  
 modo habemus idoneum, in quo possumus operari quic-  
 quid boni volumus ; ergo adiuuet me nunc amicus meus 40  
 Pirrus.' Qui satis gauisus de nuntio, ait se illum adiuuare  
 omnino sicut agere deberet. Nocte itaque veniente  
 proxima, misit caute filium suum pignus Boamundo,  
 vt securior fieret de introitu vrbs. Misit quoque ei  
 verba in hunc modum, vt in crastinum omnem Fran- 45  
 corum gentem praeconiare atque summouere faciat,  
 quod in Saracenorum terram depraedare vadat dissi-  
 mulans ac deinde celeriter reuertatur per dextram  
 montaneam. 'Ego vero', ait, 'ero intentione erecta  
 praestolans illa agmina, eaque recipiam in turres quas in 50  
 mea habeo potestate ac custodia.' Dein Boamundus

25 adventu exercitus C nostrorum scilicet C 26 Agulano-  
 rum B om. Angulanorum CER Azinitarum G (Bongars)  
 27-28 om. gentilium . . . nescio BC 28 nos omnes C 33  
 promisit nobis ER 34 ei illam C 35 sua habeat potestate C  
 43 filium suum pirrus C : pyrrus ER 44 misitque B  
 illi C 45 crastino C 45-46 Francorum exercitum C 46  
 om. praeconiare atque codd. R summoverti CER : sumoneri  
 B faceret C : om. faciat ER 47 et quasi codd. R om.  
 in CER depraedari codd. R 47-48 dissimulet BER :  
 similet C 51 Deinde B : denique C



iussit celeriter ad se vocari quendam seruientem suum, videlicet Malam coronam, eique praecepit, vt quasi praeco commoneret Francorum maximam gentem, 55 quatinus fideliter praepararet se in Saracenorum itura terram. Factumque est ita. Credidit itaque Boamundus hoc consilium duci Godefrido et Flandrensi comiti, comiti quoque de S. Aegidio atque Podiensi episcopo, dicens: 'Quia Dei fauente gratia, hac nocte tradetur nobis 60 Antiochia.' Ordinata sunt denique haec omnia; milites tenuerunt plana, et pedites montaneam. Tota nocte equitauerunt et ambulauerunt vsque prope auroram, ac deinceps ceperunt appropinquare ad turres quas ille vigil custodiebat. Confestim ascendit Boamundus et prae- 65 cepit omnibus, dicens: 'Ite securo animo et felici concordia, et ascendite per scalas in Antiochiam, quam statim habebimus, si Deo placet, in nostra custodia.' Venerunt illi vsque ad scalam, quae iam erat erecta et fortiter ligata ad ciuitatis merulas, et ascenderunt per 70 illam homines fere sexaginta ex nostris, ac diuisi sunt per turres quas ille obseruabat. Videns hoc Pirrus quod tam pauci ascendissent ex nostris, cepit pauere, timens sibi et nostris, ne in manus Turcorum inciderent, dixit: 'Micro Francos echome': hoc est: "paucos Francos habemus." Vbi est acerrimus Boamundus? vbi est ille miles inuictus? Interim descendit quidam seruiens Longobardus deorsum et cucurrit quantocius ad Boamundum, dicens: 'Quid hic stas, vir prudens? Quam ob rem huc venisti? Ecce nos iam tres turres habemus.' Motus est 80 ille cum aliis, et omnes gaudentes peruenerunt ad scalam.

55 preparet se ut eat C ituram ER: om. itura C 61  
planam CER 62 om. et ambulauerunt C 63 pervigil  
CER 64 descendit HaR 66 per scalam HaR 67  
vestra G (Bongars) 69 menia BER: menia civitatis C  
71 quas ille custodiebat CER 73 dixitque HaR: et  
dixit C 75 om. miles codd. R 78 hic agis CER 79 om.  
tres E



Videntes itaque illi qui iam erant in turribus, coeperunt iocunda voce clamare, 'Deus le volt!' Nos vero idem clamabamus. Nunc coeperunt ilico mirabiliter ascendere; ascenderunt tamen, et cucurrerunt festinanter in alias turres. Quos illic inueniebant, mortalem eis continuo 85 dabant sententiam; fratrem quoque Pirri occiderunt. Interea forte rupta est scala, per quam noster erat ascensus; vnde inter nos orta est immensa angustia et tristitia. Quanquam autem scala fuisset fracta, tamen quaedam erat porta iuxta nos clausa in sinistra parte, 90 quae quibusdam manebat incognita; nox namque erat, sed tamen palpando et inquirendo inuenimus eam, omnesque cucurrimus ad illam, et, ipsa fracta, intrauimus per eam. Tunc innumerabilis fragor mirabiliter resonabat per totam urbem. Non adqueiuit Boamundus his, sed 95 ilico imperauit honorabile vexillum deferri sursum coram castello, in quodam monte; omnes vero pariter stridebant in ciuitate. Summo autem diluculo, audientes illi qui foris erant in tentoriis vehementissimum rumorem strepere per ciuitatem, exierunt festinantes et viderunt 100 vexillum Boamundi sursum in monte, celerique cursu properantes, venerunt omnes et per portas intrauerunt in urbem, et interfecerunt Turcos et Saracenos quos ibi reppererunt, extra illos qui fugerant sursum in castrum. Alii vero Turcorum per portas exierunt et fugientes 105 viui euaserunt. Cassianus vero, dominus illorum, timens valde gentem Francorum, dedit se omnino fugae, cum aliis multis qui erant cum eo, et fugiendo peruenit in Tancredi terram non longe a ciuitate. Fatigati vero

81 itaque hii C: itaque quia iam E 82 Deus vult  
*codd. R* nos quoque C 83 acclamauimus C  
 tunc coeperunt C 85 morti tradebant *codd. R* 87  
 fracta C 88 maxima orta est angustia atque C  
 93 ad eam C 93-94 per illam ER 95 acquieuit  
 ... hii C 100 videre C 104 reppererunt C 105  
 fugerunt C 106 Cassianus quoque C 107 omnimodo HaR



110 erant equi eorum, miseruntque se in quoddam casale  
 et mersi sunt in vnam domum. Cognouerunt ergo  
 eum habitatores illius montanae, scilicet Suriani et  
 Hermenii, et confestim apprehenderunt eum, trun-  
 caueruntque caput illius, et tulerunt ante Boamundi  
 115 praesentiam, vt inde mererentur libertatem accipere.  
 Balteum quoque eius et vaginam appraeciauerunt  
 sexaginta bizanteis. Haec omnia gesta sunt tertia die  
 intrante mense Iunio, quinta feria, tertia nonas Iunii.  
 Omnes namque plateae ciuitatis iam vndique erant plenae  
 120 cadaueribus mortuorum, ita vt nemo posset sufferre ibi  
 esse, prae nimis foetoribus; nullus vero poterat ire per  
 semitam ciuitatis, nisi super cadauera Turcorum.  
 1098 **XXI.** Curbaram autem, princeps militiae Soldani  
 Persiae, dum adhuc esset Corrozanum, quotiens Cassianus  
 Ammiralius Antiochiae legationem ei misit, quo sibi  
 succurreret in tempore opportuno, quoniam gens fortis-  
 5 sima Francorum eum impeditum grauitur obsidebat in  
 Antiochia; et si adiutorium ei impenderet, urbem  
 Antiochenam illi traderet, aut eum maximo munere  
 ditaret; cumque iam habuisset maximum exercitum  
 Turcorum, ex longo collectum tempore, et licentiam  
 10 Christianos occidendi accepisset a Calipha illorum Aposto-  
 lico, ilico incoauit iter longae viae Antiochiae. Hiero-  
 solymitanus Ammiralius in adiutorium cum suo exercitu  
 venit. Rex Damasci illuc venit cum maxima gente.  
 Idem vero Curbaram congregauit innumeras gentes  
 15 paganorum, videlicet Turcos, Arabes, Saracenos, Publi-

110 quamdam *B*      114 capud eius *C*      117 bizantiis *B*:  
 bisanteis *ER*: argenteis seu byzanteis *C*      *om.* tertia die *CER*  
 118 tertio *C*      120 mortuorum *HaR*      *om.* sufferre  
*CER*

**XXI.** 1 *om.* autem *HaR*      1-2 Regis persie *C*      2 *om.*  
 quotiens *C*      2-3 quantocius misit ad eum legationem *C*  
 7-8 *om.* aut . . . ditaret *B*      8 idem Curbaran maximum *C*  
 11 inchoavit *Ha*      ad Antiochiam *C*



canos, Azimitas, Curtos, Perses, Agulanos et alias multas gentes innumerabiles. Et Agulani fuerunt numero tria millia, qui neque lanceas, neque sagittas, neque vlla arma timebant, quia omnes erant vndique cooperti ferro, et equi eorum; ipsique nolebant in bellum ferre 20 arma, nisi solummodo gladios. Isti omnes venerunt in obsidionem Antiochiae ad dispergendum Francorum collegium. Et cum appropinquassent vrbi, venit obuiam illis Sensadolus, filius Cassiani Ammiralii Antiochiae, et continuo cucurrit ad Curbaram lacrymabiliter rogans 25 eum dicens: 'Inuictissime Princeps, te supplex praecor, quatinus modo mihi succurras; quoniam Franci vndique obsident me in Antiocheno oppido, urbemque in suo tenent imperio, nosque alienare a regione Romaniae siue Cyriae, adhuc autem et Corrozani, capiunt. Omnia 30 patrauere quae voluerunt, patrem occiderunt meum; nihil aliud superest, nisi vt me et te et omnes alios ex genere nostro interficiant. Ego namque iam dudum tuum exspecto auxilium, vt mihi succurras in hoc periculo.' Cui ait ille: 'Si vis vt ex toto corde in tuo sim 35 proficuo, tibiue fideliter in hoc succurram periculo, illud oppidum in meam trades manum, et tum videbis qualiter in tuo ero proficuo, idque faciam custodire meos homines.' Ait illi Sensadolus: 'Si potes omnes Francos occidere, mihique capita eorum tradere, tibi dabo 40 oppidum, tibiue faciam hominum et in tua fidelitate custodiam illud oppidum.' Cui Curbaram: 'Non ita', inquit, 'erit, sed continuo in meam manum committe

16 Persas *HaR* 19 quoniam *C* 23 appropinquarent  
*C* 26 et dicens *HaR* 29-30 Romana sive Syriaca *ER*  
30 Syriae *Ha* necnon etiam et *C*: aut et *ER* 31  
occidere *B*: patrem meum occiderunt *ER* 32 nichil iam *C*  
alias *C* 35 periculo et proficuo *C* 36 om. tibiue . . .  
periculo *C* 37 trade *HaRTud* tunc videbis *HaTud* 38-39  
custodiri a meis hominibus *C*: meis hominibus *HaR* 43  
inquit *C* continue *C*



castrum.' Tamen volens nolensque ei commisit castrum.  
 45 Tertia vero die postquam intrauimus ciuitatem, eorum  
 praecursores ante urbem praecurrerunt; exercitus autem  
 illorum ante pontem Farreum castrametatus est; et  
 expugnauerunt turrim, et occiderunt omnes quos illic  
 inuenerunt, et nemo euasit uiuus nisi dominus illorum,  
 50 quem inuenimus ligatum in vinculis ferreis, facto maiore  
 bello. Crastina vero die, moto exercitu paganorum,  
 appropinquauerunt vrbi, et castrametati sunt inter duo  
 flumina, steteruntque ibi per duos dies. Recepto itaque  
 castro, Curbaram conuocauit vnum ammiralium ex suis,  
 55 quem sciebat veracem, mitem, et pacificum, et ait illi:  
 'Volo vt intres in fidelitatem meam custodire hoc  
 castrum, quoniam ex longissimo tempore scio te fidelis-  
 simum, ideoque precor te vt summa cautela hoc serues  
 oppidum, adhuc namque quod scio te in opere prudentis-  
 60 simum, nullum magis veracem et fortissimum hic modo  
 reperire possum.' Cui ait Ammiralius: 'Tibi vnquam de  
 tali nollem obedire officio: sed priusquam me tuo  
 arguas stimulo, hoc faciam illo tenore, vt si Franci  
 eiecerint vos de mortali praelio, et vicerint, eis con-  
 65 tinuo tradam hoc castrum.' Dixitque illi Curbaram:  
 'Tam honestum et prudentem te cognosco, vt omne quic-  
 quid boni vis agere, ego consentiam.' Reuersus est ita-  
 que Curbaram ad suum exercitum, et protinus Turci,  
 deludentes Francorum collegium, detulerunt ante con-

44 Tandem volens *Ha* sive nolens *BC* commisit ille  
*HaER* 45 *om.* civitatem *ER* 46 ante civitatem *ER*  
 praecurrerunt *C* 47 ad pontem *Ha*: ad Pontem Ferreum  
*ER* 49 *om.* vivus *ER* 50 *om.* in *C* 51 pagani *C*  
 52 ad urbem *C* 53 Recepto autem *C* 54 corbaran *C*  
 57 longo *C* 58 istud mihi serves *C* 59 oppidulum *B* 59-61  
*om.* adhuc... possum *codd. R* 62 nollem (vellem *C*) de tali  
*CER* obedire servicio *B*: re obedire *C*: officio obedire *ER* sed  
 tunc *B*: sed tamen *C* 62-63 *om.* priusquam... stimulo *codd.*  
*R* 63 eo tenore *CER* 64 nos *C* 68 *om.* Turci *CE*  
 69 deridentes *C*



spectum Curbaram quendam vilissimum ensem rubigine 70  
 tectum et deterrimum arcum ligneum et lanceam nimis  
 inutilem quae abstulerant nuper pauperibus peregrinis,  
 dixeruntque : ' Ecce arma quae attulerunt Franci obuam  
 nobis ad pugnam ! ' Tunc Curbaram coepit subridere  
 palam, dicens omnibus qui in illo aderant collegio : ' Haec 75  
 sunt arma bellica et nitida quae attulerunt Christiani  
 super nos in Asiam, quibus putant nos et confidunt expel-  
 lere vltra confinia Corrozaniae, et delere nomina nostra  
 vltra Amazonia flumina, qui propulerunt omnes parentes  
 nostros a Romania et Antiochia vrbe regia, quae est 80  
 honorabile caput totius Syriae.' Mox conuocauit suum  
 fidelem notarium, et ait : ' Scribe cito plures chartas,  
 quae in Corrozaniam sint legendae, videlicet : Caliphae  
 nostro Apostolico, ac nostro regi domino Soldano, militi  
 fortissimo, atque omnibus prudentissimis Corrozaniae 85  
 militibus, salus et immensus honor. Satis sint laeti et  
 gauisi iocunda concordia et satisfaciant ventribus, im-  
 perent et sermocinent per vniuersam regionem illam, vt  
 omnino dent sese ad petulantiam et luxuriam, multosque  
 filios patrare congaudeant, qui contra Christianos fortiter 90  
 pugnare praeualeant, et libenter suscipiant haec tria  
 arma quae olim abstulimus a Francorum turma, et  
 discant modo quae arma attulerit super nos gens  
 Francigena, qualiter optima et perfecta sunt, heu ! certare  
 contra nostra arma, quae bis aut ter, siue quater sunt 95  
 colata, aut purgata ceu argentum aut aurum purissimum.

70 unum vilissimum *ER* : quendam vilissimum *Tud* 71 teter-  
 rimum *HaTud* (*codd. ACD*) 73-74 contra nos *C* 74  
 Curbara *G* (*Bongars*) 75 *om.* qui . . . collegio *codd. R* heccine  
*C* 76 nos Christiani *CER* 78 *om.* delere *ER* omnia  
*codd. R* 79 sicut propulerunt *C* 81 caput totius sirie *C*  
 82 *om.* fidelem *HaR* 85 prudentibus *C* 89 et ad  
 luxuriam *Ha* : ad luxuriam (*om.* et) *ER* 90 *om.* fortiter *B*  
 92 attulimus *B* 93 modo qualia *C* arma attulerant *B* : attulit  
 94-96 *om.* qualiter . . . purissimum *codd. R* 94 certate *G*  
 (*Bongars*) 96 colorata *G* seu *G*



Adhuc quoque sciant omnes, quoniam ego cunctos  
 Francos intus in Antiochia conclusos habeo et castrum  
 mea libera teneo voluntate, illi vero deorsum sunt in  
 100 ciuitate ; habeo etiam omnes illos iam in mea manu, eos-  
 que faciam aut capitalem subire sententiam aut deduci in  
 Corrozanam in captiuitatem nimiam, eo quod minantur  
 nos suis armis propulsare et expellere ab omnibus  
 finibus nostris aut eiicere vltra superiorem Indiam,  
 105 ceu eiecerunt omnes parentes nostros a Romania siue  
 Syria. Amodo iuro vobis per Machomet et per omnia  
 Deorum nomina quoniam ante vestram non ero redi-  
 turus praesentiam, donec regalem vrbem Antiochiam,  
 et omnem Suriam siue Romaniam atque Bulgariam  
 110 vsque in Apuliam adquisiero, mea forti dextera, ad  
 deorum honorem et vestrum et omnium qui sunt ex  
 genere Turcorum.' Sic fecit finem dictis.

1098 **XXII.** Mater vero eiusdem Curbaram, quae erat in  
 Aleph ciuitate, statim venit ad eum, dixitque illi lacryma-  
 biliter : 'Fili, suntne vera, quae audio ?' Cui ait ille :  
 'Quae ?' Et dixit illa : 'Audiui quia bellum vis commit-  
 5 tere cum Francorum gente.' Ait ille : 'Hoc verum om-  
 nino scias.' Dixit illa : 'Contestor te, fili, per omnium  
 Deorum nomina et per tuam magnam bonitatem, ne bel-  
 lum cum Francis committas, quoniam tu es miles inuictus,  
 et nullam imprudentiam ex te aut ex tuo exercitu vnquam  
 10 penitus audiui, et te e campo ab aliquo victore fu-  
 gientem quisquam minime inuenit. Diffamata est tua  
 militia vbique, omnesque prudentes milites, audito tuo

98-99 castrum in mea *HaR* 100 *om.* iam *ER* 101 *om.*  
 aut *ER* 102 *om.* minantur *C* 104 *om.* aut eiicere  
 . . . Indiam (Iudaeam) *BCE* superiorem Iudaeam *G(Bon-*  
*gars)R* 105 seu *G(Bongars)* sicut *C* 107 nomina *CE*  
**XXII.** 2 denuo venit *codd. R* 4 *om.* dixit *C* 5 At ille  
*codd. R* : ille respondit *C om.* Hoc *HaR* 7 nomina *CE*  
 8-10 *om.* et nullam . . . audiui *codd. R*



nomine, contremiscunt. Satis scimus, fili, quoniam tu  
 es bellipotens et fortis, et bellorum ingeniosus, nullaue  
 gens Christianorum vel paganorum ante tuum con- 15  
 spectum aliquam virtutem habere potuit; sed fugie-  
 bant solummodo audito tuo nomine, sicut oues ante  
 leonis furorem fugiunt. Ideoque obsecro te, charissime  
 fili, vt meis acquiescas consiliis et ne vnquam in tuo  
 haesitet animo aut in tuo inueniatur consilio, vt bellum 20  
 velis incipere cum Christianorum gente.' Tunc Curbaram,  
 materna audiens monita, feroci respondit sermone:  
 'Quid est hoc, mater, quod mihi refers? Puto quod insanis,  
 aut furiis es plena. Enimuero mecum habeo plures am-  
 miralios, quam Christiani sint, siue maiores siue minores.' 25  
 Respondit ei mater sua: 'O dulcissime fili, Christiani  
 nequeunt vobiscum bellare; scio namque quod non  
 valent vobis pugnam inferre, sed Deus eorum pro ipsis  
 cotidie pugnat, eosque diu noctuque sua protectione  
 defendit et vigilat super eos, sicut pastor vigilat super 30  
 gregem suum, et non permittit eos laedi nec perturbari  
 ab vlla gente, et quicumque volunt eis obsistere, idem  
 eorum Deus conturbat illos, sicut ait ipse per os Dauid  
 Prophetæ: "Dissipa gentes quae bella volunt", et alibi:  
 "Effunde iram tuam in gentes quae te non nouerunt, et 35  
 in regna quae nomen tuum non inuocauerunt." Ante-  
 quam vero praeparati sint ad incipiendum bellum, eo-  
 rum Deus optimus et bellipotens, simul cum sanctis suis  
 omnes inimicos iam habet deuictos; quanto magis modo

13 contremescunt *C* namque scimus *Ha om. fili C* 14  
*om. et bellorum ingeniosus BCE* 18 carissime *HaR*: o carissime  
*B* 20 hesites, haesites *ER*: hereat *C* 21 Christiana gente  
*HaR* 23 que sunt hoc *C* que mihi *C* 23-24 insanis et  
*C* 25 Christiani sunt *CER* 28 valent nobis *HaR* 29  
*om. cotidie C* die *B*: de noctu ac die *C* 31 laedi vel *CER*  
 conturbari *HaTud* 32 obstare *Ha* 32-33 idem  
 illorum *C* 37 praeparate *E*: preparentur *C* 38  
 omnipotens *HaTud* 39 inimicos illorum *C om. iam ER*  
*om. modo ER*



40 faciet circa vos qui eius estis inimici, et qui praeparastis  
 vos eis obsistere tota virtute? Hoc autem, karissime, in  
 rei veritate scias, quoniam isti Christiani "filii Christi"  
 vocati sunt, et prophetarum ore "filii adoptionis et pro-  
 missionis", et secundum Apostolum, "haeredes Christi"  
 45 sunt, quibus Christus haereditates repromissas iam  
 donauit, dicendo per prophetas: "A Solis ortu vsque ad  
 occasum erunt termini vestri, et nemo stabit contra vos."  
 Et quis potest his dictis contradicere, vel obstare? Certe  
 si hoc bellum contra illos inceperis, maximum tibi erit  
 50 damnum ac dedecus, et multos tuos fideles milites perdes,  
 et vniversa spolia, quae apud te habes, amittes, et nimio  
 pauore fugiendo euerteris. Tu autem in hoc bello non  
 morieris modo, sed tamen in hoc anno, quoniam ipse  
 Deus non statim vindicat offendentem se exerta ira, sed  
 55 quando vult punit eum manifesta vindicta, ideoque  
 timeo ne te iudicet poenali tristitia. Non morieris, in-  
 quam, modo, verumtamen perditurus es in praesentiarum  
 habita.' Curbaram denique valde dolens intimis visceri-  
 bus, auditis maternis sermonibus, respondit: 'Mater  
 60 karissima, quaeso te, quis dixit tibi ista de gente Chris-  
 tiana, quod Deus eorum tantum eos amet, et quod ipse  
 pugnandi virtutem in se retinet maximam, et quod illi  
 Christiani vincent nos in Antiocheno praelio, et quod  
 ipsi capturi sunt nostra spolia, nosque persecuturi magna  
 65 victoria, et quod in hoc anno moriturus sum morte  
 subitanea?' Tunc respondit ei mater, dolens: 'Fili  
 karissime, ecce sunt plusquam centum annorum tempora,  
 de quibus inuentum est in nostra pagina et in gentilium

41 carissime *HaR*      42 filii dei *C*      43 ora *C*      47 om.  
 erunt *C*      47-48 qui potest *HaR*      48 hiis *C*      obsistere *CER*  
 49 contra eos *HaR*      illa *C*      53 tantum *ER*      54 iudicat  
*HaR*      sed exerta ira quem *ER*      55 punit cum *HaR*      57  
 in presenti *B*      60 carissima *HaR*      tibi talia *CER*      62  
 retineat *C*      63 Antiochena prelia *B*      66 mater sua *HaR*  
 67 carissime *HaR*



voluminibus, quoniam gens Christiana foret super nos  
ventura et nos vbique victura ac super paganos regna- 70  
tura, et nostra gens illis vbique erit subdita. Sed ignoro,  
vtrum modo an in futuro sint haec ventura. Ego  
vtique misera sum te secuta ab Aleph, vrbe pulcherrima,  
in qua speculando atque ingeniose rimando respexi in  
coelorum astra et sagaciter scrutata sum planetas et 75  
duodecim signa siue sortes innumeras; in eis omnibus  
reperi, quoniam gens Christiana vbique nos est deuictura,  
ideoque de te valde timeo, nimis moesta, ne ex te rema-  
neam orbata.' Dixit illi Curbaram: 'Mater karissima,  
dic mihi omnia quae in corde meo sunt incredula.' 80  
Quae respondens ait: 'Hoc, karissime, libenter faciam,  
si sciero ea quae tibi sunt incognita.' Cui ille dixit:  
'Non sunt igitur Boamundus et Tancredus Francorum dii,  
et non eos liberant de inimicis suis, et quod ipsi man-  
ducant in vno quoque prandio duo millia vaccas et qua- 85  
tuor millia porcos?' Respondit mater: 'Fili karissime,  
Boamundus et Tancredus mortales sunt, sicut alii omnes;  
sed Deus eorum valde diligit eos prae omnibus aliis et  
virtutem praeliandi dat eis prae caeteris. Nam Deus  
illorum, omnipotens est nomen eius, qui fecit coelum et 90  
terram et fundauit maria et omnia quae in eis sunt,  
cuius sedes in coelo est parata in aeternum, cuius pote-  
stas vbique est metuenda.' Ait filius: 'Si ita est causa,  
cum eis praeliari non desinam.' Itaque audiens mater eius  
quod nullo modo acquiesceret consiliis suis, moestissima 95

69 quod gens BC super nos foret HaR: esset C 70 undi-  
que nos C om. et nos ubique victura B 72 eventura HaR  
sunt hec hec (sic) eventura C 73 itaque misera ER Alech E  
civitate C pulcherrima HaR 74 ingenio servando ER 77  
repperi HaTud (codd. BE) quod gens C nos ubique HaR  
undique C 78 timeo valde HaR 79 carissima HaR  
81 om. respondens codd. R carissime HaR 82 sunt incredula  
ER 84 non ipsi HaR 86 carissime HaR 90 omni-  
potens nomen CE: est omnipotens B 92 om. in coelo C  
om. est BC 95 acquiesceret C Ha om. suis C



recessit retrorsum in Aleph, deferens secum cuncta spolia quae conducere potuit.

1098 **XXIII.** Tertia vero die armauit se Curbaram et maxima pars Turcorum cum eo, veneruntque ad ciuitatem ex illa parte in qua erat castrum. Nos autem putantes resistere posse illis, paruimus bellum contra eos. Sed tam magna  
5 fuit virtus illorum, quod nequiuimus illis resistere; sicque coacti intrauimus ciuitatem; quibus fuit tam mirabiliter arta et angusta porta, vt illinc fuerint multi mortui oppressione aliorum. Interea alii pugnabant extra  
10 ad vespeream. Inter haec Wilhelmus de Grentemaisnil et Albricus frater eius, et Wido Trursellus, et Lambertus Pauper, isti omnes timore perterriti de hesterno bello, quod durauerat vsque ad vespeream, nocte latenter demissi sunt per murum, fugientes pedibus contra mare,  
15 ita vt neque in manibus neque in pedibus remaneret aliquid nisi solummodo ossa. Multique alii fugerunt cum illis, quos nescio. Venientes igitur ad naues quae erant ad portum S. Symeonis, dixerunt nautis: 'Quid hic, miseri, statis? Omnes nostri mortui sunt, et nos mor-  
20 tem vix euasimus, quia exercitus Turcorum vndique obsident alios in vrbe.' At illi audientes talia stabant stupefacti, ac timore perterriti cucurrerunt ad naues et miserunt se in mare. Deinde superuenientes Turci, quos inuenerunt, occiderunt, et naues quae in alueo fluminis

**XXIII.** 1 die post C      4 nos ad bellum C      contra illos C  
5 om. virtus E      illic resistere C      6 in ciuitatem *codd.* R  
7 angusta fuit E      ut illic HaR      10 Grentamenilg  
G (*Bongars*): Grentemaisnelo C: Grentamasnil Ha      11  
Albericus HaR      Trossellus ER: Trussellus et Wilhelmus de  
Sichys C      12 pro hesterno C      13 duravit C      14 sunt  
fune C      15 in pedibus eorum CER      16 Multi etiam C  
16-17 om. cum illis C      17 quos ignoro CER      23 in  
mare E      Post verba miserunt se om. E omnia quae sequuntur  
usque ad c. XXIX Ipsa hora venit vir      denique super-  
uenientes B



remanserant, combusserunt igni, et apprehenderunt <sup>25</sup>  
 spolia eorum. Nos denique qui remansimus, nequiuimus  
 sufferre pondus armorum illorum ; fecimusque murum  
 inter nos et illos, quem custodiebamus diu noctuque.  
 Interea tanta oppressione fuimus oppressi, vt equos et  
 asinos nostros manducaremus. <sup>30</sup>

**XXIIII.** Quodam vero die stantibus nostris maioribus, <sup>1098</sup>  
 sursum ante castellum tristibus ac dolentibus, venit  
 quidam sacerdos ad eos, et dixit : ‘ Seniores, si vobis  
 placet, audite rem quandam, quam in visione vidi.  
 Cum nocte vna iacerem in ecclesia S. Mariae matris <sup>5</sup>  
 Domini nostri Iesu Christi, apparuit mihi Saluator mundi  
 cum sua genitrice et B. Petro apostolorum principe,  
 stetitque ante me et dixit mihi : “ Agnoscis me ? ” Cui  
 respondi : “ Non ; ” His dictis, ecce apparuit integra crux  
 in capite eius. Iterum ergo interrogauit me Dominus, <sup>10</sup>  
 dicens : “ Agnoscis me ? ” Cui dixi : “ Te alio modo non  
 agnosco, nisi quia crucem in capite tui cerno, sicut Salua-  
 toris nostri : ” Qui dixit : “ Ego sum.” Statim cecidi  
 ad pedes eius, rogans humiliter, vt subueniret nobis in  
 oppressione illa quae super nos erat. Respondit Dominus : <sup>15</sup>  
 “ Bene adiuui vos, et amodo adiuuabo. Ego permisi vos  
 habere Niceam ciuitatem et omnia deuincere bella, et  
 condux i vos huc vsque, et condolui vestrae miseriae quam  
 passi fuistis in obsidione Antiochiae. Ecce in auxilio  
 oportuno misi vos sanos et incolumes in ciuitatem ; et <sup>20</sup>  
 ecce, multam prauam dilectionem operantes cum  
 Christianis et prauis paganis mulieribus, vnde im-  
 mensus foetor ascendit in coelum.” Tunc alma Virgo

<sup>25</sup> igne C      <sup>26</sup> in urbe remanseramus C      <sup>27</sup> om. sufferre  
 C      <sup>27-28</sup> murum ante nos C      <sup>28</sup> die BC      <sup>29</sup> tanta  
 necessitate C

**XXIIII.** <sup>1</sup> Quadam vero C      <sup>2</sup> ante BC      <sup>3</sup> illos C  
<sup>9</sup> Hiis dictis C      om. ecce B      <sup>11</sup> Agnoscis? C  
 alimodo C      <sup>12</sup> capite tuo C      <sup>15</sup> om. illa C      <sup>20</sup> oppor-  
 tuno Ha      <sup>21</sup> pravamque C      operati estis C



et B. Petrus ceciderunt ad pedes eius, rogantes eum et  
 25 deprecantes, vt suum in hac tribulatione adiuuaret  
 populum. Dixitque B. Petrus: "Domine, per tot tempora  
 tenuit paganorum gens domum meam, in qua multa et  
 ineffabilia mala fecerunt. Modo vero expulsis inimicis  
 inde, Domine, laetantur angeli in coelis." Dixitque mihi  
 30 Dominus: "Vade ergo et dic populo meo, vt reuertatur  
 ad me, et ego reuertar ad illum, et infra quinque dies  
 mittam ei magnum adiutorium, et cotidie decantet  
 responsorium: Congregati sunt, totum cum versu.  
 Seniores, si hoc non creditis esse verum, sinite modo  
 35 me in hanc scandere turrim, mittamque me deorsum;  
 si vero fuero incolumis, credatis hoc esse verum; sin  
 autem vllam laesionem fuero passus, decollate me, aut  
 in ignem proiicite me.' Tunc Podiensis episcopus iussit, vt  
 adferentur Euangelia et crux, quatinus iuraret ille hoc  
 40 esse verum. Consiliati sunt omnes maiores nostri in illa  
 hora, vt iurarent sacramentum, quod illorum nullus  
 fugeret, neque pro morte neque pro vita, quandiu viui  
 essent. Primus dicitur iurasse Boamundus, deinde  
 comes S. Aegidii, et Rotbertus Nortmannus, ac dux  
 45 Godefridus, et comes Flandrensis. Tancredus vero iurauit  
 ac promisit tali modo, quia quandiu secum quadraginta  
 milites haberet, non solum ex illo bello, sed etiam ab  
 Hierosolymitano itinere non esset recessurus. Nimis  
 autem exultauit Christiana congregatio, hoc audiens  
 50 sacramentum.

24 om. eum C      32 mittam eis C      decantent hoc C  
 33 responsorium G (Bongars)      sunt inimici nostri C      36  
 om. vero C      36-37 si autem C      38 proiicite om. me  
 C      39 afferentur C      si hoc BC      40 esset B:  
 verum esset C      41 iurarent omnes BC      super sacramen-  
 tum C      nullus eorum C: nullus illorum B      42-43  
 vivus esset C      44-45 Egidii Comesque nobilis normannie  
 Robertus et Comes flandrensis et dux Godefridus C      45 om.  
 vero C      47 in B hoc bello C      48 ierosolimitano BC  
 itinere recederet C      49-50 audito sacramento C



**XXV.** Erat autem quidam peregrinus de nostro exercitu, cui nomen Petrus, cui antequam ciuitatem intraremus apparuit S. Andreas apostolus, dicens: 'Quid agis, bone vir?' Cui ille respondit: 'Tu quis es?' Dixit ei apostolus: 'Ego sum Andreas apostolus. Agnoscas fili, quia dum villam intraueris, vadens ad ecclesiam B. Petri, ibi inuenies lanceam Saluatoris nostri Iesu Christi, ex qua in crucis pendens patibulo vulneratus est.' Haec omnia dicens apostolus continuo recessit. Ipse autem timens reuelare consilium apostoli, noluit indicare nostris peregrinis. Estimabat autem se visum videre et dixit ad eum: 'Domine, quis hoc crediderit?' In illa vero hora accepit eum S. Andreas et portauit eum vsque ad locum vbi lancea erat recondita in terra. Iterum cum essemus ita vt superius diximus, venit S. Andreas rursus dicens ei: 'Quare non abstulisti lanceam de terra, vt ego tibi praecepi? Scias reuera, quia quicumque lanceam hanc portauerit in bello, nunquam ab hoste superabitur.' Petrus vero continuo reuelauit mysterium apostoli, hominibus nostris. Populus autem non credebat, sed prohibebat, dicens: 'Quomodo possumus hoc credere?' Omnino enim erant pauentes et protinus mori putabant. Accessit itaque ille et iurauit hoc totum veracissimum esse, quoniam ei S. Andreas bis in visione apparuerat, eique dixerat: 'Surge, vade et dic populo Dei, ne timeat, sed firmiter toto corde credat in vnum verum Deum, eruntque vbique victuri, et infra quinque dies mandabit eis Dominus talem rem, vnde laeti et gauisi manebunt,

**XXV.** 1 autem ibi BC 2 nomine Petrus C huic  
antequam C 3 apparuerat C 4 qui es? B 5 Scias  
fili C 8 vulneratus fuit BC 11 enim se C visum vidisse  
C 12 crederet C 12-13 illa hora C 14 lancea re-  
condita C 15 dixi C 16 dicens illi BC uti ego B  
19 continuo mori C 23 verissimum C 24 om. ei C  
illi apparuerat C 25 valde et C 27-28 mandabit  
illis C



et si certare voluerint, mox vt exierint vnanimiter ad  
 30 bellum, omnes inimici eorum vincentur, et nemo stabit  
 contra illos.' Audientes itaque quod inimici eorum ab  
 eis omnino essent vincendi, protinus coeperunt sese viuifi-  
 care et confortabant se adinuicem dicentes: 'Expergi-  
 scimini, et estote vbique fortes et prudentes, quoniam  
 35 in proximo erit nobis Deus in adiutorium; et erit  
 maximum refugium populo suo, quem respicit in moerore  
 manentem.'

1098 **XXVI.** Turci denique qui erant seorsum in castello  
 vndique tam mirabiliter coangustabant nos, vt quadam  
 die incluserint tres milites ex nostris in turrim quae erat  
 ante eorum castellum. Exierant namque gentiles et  
 5 irruerant super illos tam acriter, vt nequirent sufferre  
 pondus eorum. Duo ex militibus exierunt de turri vulne-  
 rati, et tertius per totam diem viriliter defendebat se de  
 Turcorum inuasionem tam prudenter, vt in ipsa die duos  
 Turcos strauerit super aditum muri caesis hastis. Nam  
 10 tres hastae detruncatae sunt in illa die in manibus suis.  
 Illi vero acceperunt capitalem sententiam. Erat nomen  
 illi Hugo li Forcenez, de exercitu Gosfredi de Monte  
 Scaioso. Videns autem vir venerabilis Boamundus quia  
 nullatenus posset conducere gentes sursum in castellum  
 15 ad bellum:—nam qui erant inclusi in domibus, timebant  
 alii fame, alii timore Turcorum:—iratus est valde,  
 iussitque confestim mitti ignem per urbem in illa parte  
 in qua erat Cassiani palatium. Quod videntes illi qui

31 Audientes itaque hoc nostri: *om.* quod inimici . . .  
 vincendi C 34 ac prudentes C 36 suo refugium C  
 quoniam respicit C

**XXVI.** 1 *om.* denique C in castello sursum C 4 *om.*  
 ante eorum castellum C exierant enim C 6 ex illis C  
 6-7 vulnerati Tertius vero C 7 totum C *om.* viriliter C  
 defendit C 10 illi in manibus suis in illa die C: illi B 11  
 Illi duo C Erat autem C 12 huic hugo visanus C *om.* li  
 Forcenez C 13 Scabioso C *HaTud om.* venerabilis C



erant in ciuitate, dereliquerunt domos, et omnia quae habebant, fugiebantque alii in castellum, alii ad portam 20 comitis S. Aegidii, alii ad portam ducis Godefridi, vnusquisque ad suam gentem. Tunc nimia tempestas venti subito surrexit, ita vt nemo posset se regere rectum. Boamundus itaque vir sapiens contristatus est valde, timens pro ecclesia Sancti Petri et Sanctae Mariae 25 aliisque ecclesiis. Haec ira durauit ab hora tertia vsque in mediam noctem, fueruntque crematae fere duo millia ecclesiarum et domorum. Veniente autem media nocte, statim omnis feritas ignis cecidit. Itaque Turci habitantes in castello intra vrbem bellabant nobiscum diu noctu- 30 que, et nihil aliud disseparabat nos nisi arma. Videntes hoc nostri, quod non possent diu haec pati, quoniam qui habebat panem non licebat ei manducare, et qui habebat aquam, non licebat bibere, fecerunt murum inter nos et ipsos petra et calce, et aedificauerunt castellum 35 et machinas, vt securi essent. Pars autem Turcorum remansit in castello agendo nobiscum bellum, alia vero pars hospitata erat prope castellum in vna valle. Nocte quippe superueniente, ignis de coelo apparuit ab occidente veniens et appropinquans cecidit intra Turcorum 40 exercitus, vnde mirati sunt et nostri et Turci. Mane autem facto, tremefacti Turci fugerunt omnes pariter pro ignis timore ante domini Boamundi portam, illicque hospitati sunt. Pars vero quae erat in castello, agebat bellum cum nostris die nocteque, sagittando, vul- 45 nerando, occidendo. Alia autem pars vndique obsedit

23 *om. ita C* posset recte incedere *C* 24-26 *om. Boamundus*  
 . . . ecclesiis *C* 25 timens pro aliisque ecclesiis *G(Bongars)ER*  
 26 hora diei *C* 27 ad mediam *C* cremata *C* 29 statim  
 cecidit *C* ignis. Itaque *C* 30 die *B* 33 habebat cibum *C*  
 licebant *C* 34 *om. aquam G(Bongars): add. aquam HaTud*  
 licebat ei *C* fecerunt ergo *C* 37 agens *C* 38-39 Nocte  
 denique *C* 41-42 Mane igitur *C* 42 *om. omnes C*  
 43 propter ignis timorem *C* 45 noctuque *Ha*



ciuitatem, ita vt nullus nostrorum ciuitatem auderet  
exire aut intrare nisi nocte et occulte. Ita vero eramus  
obsessi et oppressi ab illis paganis, inimicis Dei et Sanctae  
50 Christianitatis, quorum numerus fuit innumerabilis.  
Istique prophani et inimici Dei ita tenebant nos inclusos  
in vrbe Antiochiae, vt multi mortui fuerint fame, quo-  
niam paruus panis vendebatur vno bizantio, de vino  
non loquar. Equinas namque carnes aut asininas man-  
55 ducabant et vendebant. Vendebant quoque gallinam  
quindecim solidis, ouum duobus solidis, vnam nucem  
vno denario ; omnia enim valde erant cara. Folia fici,  
vitis, et cardui, omniumque arborum coquebant et  
manducabant, tantam famem immensam habebant. Alii  
60 coria caballorum et camelorum et asinorum atque boum  
seu bufalorum sicca decoquebant, et manducabant.  
Istas et multas anxietates ac angustias, quas nominare  
nequeo, passi sumus pro Christi nomine et S. Sepulcri  
via deliberanda. Tales quoque tribulationes et fames ac  
65 timores passi sumus per viginti sex dies.

1098 **XXVII.** Imprudens itaque Stephanus Carnotensis  
comes, quem omnes nostri maiores elegerant, vt esset  
ductor nostrorum, maxima se finxit deprimi infirmitate,  
priusquam Antiochia esset capta, turpiterque recessit  
5 in aliud castrum, quod vocatur Alexandreta. Nos itaque  
cotidie praestolabamur eum, quatinus subueniret nobis  
in adiutorio, qui eramus inclusi in vrbe salutifero carentes  
auxilio. At ille, postquam audiuit gentem Turcorum

47 audere civitatem C	48 vel intrare C	vel occulte C
Ita ergo C	49 aliis et illis C	49-50 om. paganis . . .
Christianitatis BC : Dei et sanctae Trinitatis G (Bongars)		50
illis quorum numerus erat C	51 Isti autem B	54 et asininas
C	56 quindecim ouum duobus solidis C	58 et vitis C
59 tam immensam famem C	om. habebant C	alia C
angustias C : om. ac angustias B	enumerare C	62 et
fames C		64 tales
<b>XXVII.</b> 4 antequam C	5 Nos autem C	7 aliquo
adiutorio C	8 Ipse vero C	



circumcingentem et obsidentem nos, latenter ascendit  
super proximam montaneam, quae stabat prope Antio- 10  
chiam, viditque innumerabilia tentoria, vehementique  
captus timore recessit, fugiitque festinanter cum suo  
exercitu. Veniens autem in suum castrum, exspoliavit  
illud et celeri cursu retrouertitur. Postquam vero venit  
obuiam imperatori ad Philomenam, seorsum vocavit 15  
eum secreto dicens: 'Scias reuera, quoniam capta est  
Antiochia et castrum minime captum est, nostrique  
omnes graui obsessione obsessi sunt, et, vt puto, a Turcis  
modo interfecti sunt. Reuertere ergo retro quam citius  
potes, ne et ipsi inueniant te et hanc gentem quam 20  
tecum ducis.' Tunc imperator timore perterritus clam  
vocavit Widonem, fratrem Boamundi, et quosdam alios,  
et ait illis: 'Seniores, quid faciemus? Ecce omnes nostri  
districta obsessione impediti sunt, et forsitan in hac hora  
Turcorum manibus omnes mortui sunt aut in captiuita- 25  
tem ducti, sicut iste infelix comes turpiter fugiens narrat.  
Si vultis, reuertamur retro celeri cursu, ne et nos moria-  
mur repentina morte, quemadmodum et illi mortui sunt.'  
Cum Wido miles honestissimus talia audisset fallacia,  
cum omnibus statim coepit plorare atque vehemen- 30

9 circumcinxisse et obsedissee C      10 quae erat C      11 vi-  
densque C      vehementi C      12 festinanter ut formidolosus  
C      14 retro vertit iter C: vertitur B      15 Philomenam,  
qui cum suo exercitu in auxilium properabat Christianorum C  
16 dicens et C Scia C      17 sed castrum C      18 oppressione  
HaTud obsidentur C      19 Reuertere igitur C om. retro C  
20 ne ipsi C      21 ducis. Willelmus denique de Archis dudum  
monachus egregius, tunc vero miles acerrimus, quem superius  
nominavimus se per murum cum aliis noctu latenter dimisisse,  
quique se in fuga comiti Stephano sociaverat, affirmare cepit sub  
iureiurando dicens imperatori, quia si Antiochiam pergeret, quo  
ire festinabat, caput sine dubio amitteret. Sic enim Boamundum  
iurasse cum sacramento firmabat. Hiis auditis Imperatore quia C  
24 forsan C      25 omnes a Turcorum manibus HaTud: per  
manus Turcorum occisi C      26 sicut et C      29 Wydo om.  
Cum C: Guido B      comes C      om. honestissimus C      cum  
audisset C      29-30 om. fallacia, cum omnibus C



tissimo vlulatu plangere, vnaque voce omnes dicebant :  
 ' O Deus verus, trinus et vnus, quam ob rem haec fieri  
 permisisti ? Cur populum sequentem te in manibus  
 inimicorum incidere permisisti et viam tui itineris  
 35 tuique Sepulcri liberare volentes tam cito demisisti ?  
 Certe, si verum est hoc verbum quod ab istis nequissimis  
 audiuius, nos et alii Christiani derelinquemus te, nec  
 te amplius rememorabimur, et vnus ex nobis non aude-  
 bit vlterius inuocare nomen tuum.' Et fuit hic sermo  
 40 moestissimus in tota militia, ita vt nullus illorum siue  
 episcopus siue abbas seu clericus seu laicus auderet  
 inuocare Christi nomen per plures dies. Nemo namque  
 poterat consolari Widonem plorantem et ferientem se  
 manibus, suosque frangentem digitos, et dicentem :  
 45 ' Heu mihi, domine mi Boamunde, honor et decus totius  
 mundi, quem omnis mundus timebat et amabat !  
 Heu mihi tristis ! Non merui dolens tuam videre honesti-  
 simam speciem, qui nullam rem magis videre desidera-  
 bam. Quis mihi det vt ego moriar pro te, dulcissime  
 50 amice et domine ? Cur ego ex vtero matris meae exiens,  
 non statim mortuus fui ? Cur ad hanc lugubrem diem  
 perueni ? Cur non demersus fui in mare ? Cur non ex  
 equo cecidi fracto collo, vt recepissem repentinum  
 interitum ? Vtinam tecum recepissem felix martyrium,  
 55 vt cernerem te gloriosissimum recepisse finem ! ' Cumque  
 omnes cucurrissent ad eum, quatinus consolarentur  
 eum, vt iam finem daret planctui, in se reuersus ait :  
 ' Forsitan creditis huic semicano imprudenti militi ?  
 Vnquam vere non audiui loqui de militia aliqua, quam

31 omnesque pariter cum eo unaque voce dicebant C 32  
 verus domine Ihesu Christe C om. trinus et vnus C 35 dimisisti  
 Ha 38 et nullus C om. non C 40 valde mestissimus  
 BC eorum BC 45 mihi dolens misero C 53-54 om.  
 ut . . . interitum B 55 suscepisse BC 56 ut illum con-  
 solarentur om. eum BC 58 semicani C 59 Nunquam C  
 vere audiuimus C quam ipse C



idem fecisset. Sed turpiter et inhoneste recedit, sicut 60  
nequissimus et infelix, et quicquid miser nuntiat, sciatis  
falsum esse.' Interea iussit imperator suis hominibus,  
dicens : 'Ite et conducite omnes homines istius terrae  
in Bulgariam et explore et deuastate vniuersa loca,  
vt, cum venerint Turci, nihil possint hic reperire.' Voluis- 65  
sent noluissent nostri, reuersi sunt retrorsum, dolentes  
amarissime vsque ad mortem ; fueruntque mortui multi  
ex peregrinis languentes nec valentes fortiter militiam  
sequi, remanebantque morientes in via. Omnes vero  
alii reuersi sunt Constantinopolim. 70

**XXVIII.** Nos igitur, auditis sermonibus illius qui nobis 1098  
Christi reuelationem retulit per verba apostoli, statim  
festinantes peruenimus ad locum in S. Petri ecclesia  
quem ille demonstraerat. Et foderunt ibi tredecim  
homines a mane vsque ad vesperam ; sicque homo ille 5  
inuenit lanceam, sicut indicauerat, et acceperunt illam  
cum magno gaudio et timore ; fuitque orta immensa  
laetitia in tota vrbe. Ab illa hora accepimus inter nos  
consilium belli. Porro statuerunt omnes maiores nostri  
consilium, quatinus nuncium mitterent ad inimicos 10  
Christi Turcos, qui per aliquem interpretem interro-  
garet eos securo eloquio, dicens : 'Quamobrem super-  
bissime in Christianorum introissent terram, et cur castra-  
metati sint, et quare Christi seruos occidant et con-  
quassent.' Cumque iam finis esset dictis, inuenerunt 15  
quosdam viros, Petrum scilicet heremitam et Herluinum,  
illisque dixerunt haec omnia : 'Ite ad execratum Turco-  
rum exercitum et diligenter narrate eis haec omnia,

61 esse sciatis C      65-66 Voluissent itaque C      68 pere-  
grinis et C      69 mortui in via C

**XXVIII.** 1 Nos autem C      2 om. Christi C      re-  
lationem lance domini C      4 duodecim homines C      7-8 Et  
orta magna letitia C      10 legatum C      13-14 castra super illos  
metati sunt C      15 Cum B      17 illeque(sic) C      hunc(sic) omnia C



interrogantes eos, cur audacter et superbissime in-  
 20 troierint terram Christianorum et nostram.' His dictis,  
 recesserunt nuntii, veneruntque ad prophanum collegium,  
 dicentes omnia missa verba Curbaram et aliis ita: 'Satis  
 multumque mirantur nostri maiores et seniores, quam-  
 obrem temere ac superbissime in Christianorum intro-  
 25 istis terram et illorum. Putamus forsitan et credimus,  
 quia huc ideo venistis quoniam per omnia vultis effici  
 Christiani; aut propterea igitur huc venistis, vt per  
 omnia Christianos afficiatis? Rogant vos igitur omnes  
 pariter nostri maiores, vt velociter recedatis a terra Dei  
 30 et Christianorum, quam B. Petrus apostolus iam dudum  
 praedicando ad Christi culturam conuertit. At illi  
 permittunt adhuc vobiscum deduci omnia vestra:  
 scilicet equos et mulos, asinos et camelos, oues et boues  
 et omnia alia ornamenta permittunt vobiscum, quo-  
 35 cunque volueritis, ferre.' Tunc Curbaram, princeps  
 militiae Soldani Persidis, cum omnibus aliis, pleni super-  
 bia, feroci respondere sermone: 'Deum vestrum et  
 vestram Christianitatem nec optamus nec volumus,  
 vosque cum illis omnino respuimus. Huc vsque iam  
 40 venimus, eo quod valde miramur quamobrem seniores ac  
 maiores quos memoratis, cur terram quam abstulimus  
 effeminatis gentibus illi vocant esse suam. Vultis namque  
 scire, quid vobis dicimus? Reuertimini ergo quantocius  
 et dicite vestris senioribus, quia si per omnia cupiunt  
 45 effici Turci et Deum vestrum, quem vos inclini colitis,

19-20 introierunt C      21-22 legati et ad prophanum venerunt  
 collegium dixeruntque C: venerunt ad B      23 multisque C  
 24-25 introissent C      26 om. vultis C      26-27 om. quoniam  
 ... venistis B      Christiani efficiamini C      27-28 om. aut ...  
 afficiatis      29 om. pariter C      31 ad culturam Dei C      33  
 et asinos B      oues quoque et BC      34 om. permittunt vobis-  
 cum C      36 et omnes alii C      38 nec voluntatem ad id habemus  
 C      42 om. illi C dicunt esse C      43 om. ergo C      44-45  
 cupiunt fieri C



abnegare volunt, et leges vestras spernere, nos illis hanc 50  
 et satis plus dabimus de terra, et ciuitates et castella ;  
 adhuc autem quod nemo vestrorum remanebit pedes,  
 sed erunt omnes milites, sicut et nos sumus ; et habe-  
 bimus semper eos in summa amicitia. Sin autem, sciant  
 se per omnia capitalem subire sententiam, aut deducti 55  
 in vinculis Corrozanam, in captiuitate perpetua seruiant  
 nobis nostrisque infantibus per sempiterna tempora.'  
 Nuntii vero nostri velociter reuersi sunt retrorsum,  
 referentes omnia quae respondisset eis gens crudelis-  
 sima. Fertur Herluinus vtramque scisse linguam, fuit- 60  
 que interpres Petro Heremita. Interea exercitus noster  
 in vtraque tremefactus parte ignorabat quid faceret.  
 Ex vna enim parte coangustabat eos cruciabilis fames, in  
 alia constringebat timor Turcorum.

**XXIX.** Tandem triduanis expletis ieiuniis et pro- 1098  
 cessionibus celebratis ab vna ecclesia in aliam, de peccatis  
 suis confessi sunt et absoluti, fideliterque corpori et  
 sanguini Christi communicauerunt ; datisque eleemosynis  
 fecerunt celebrari missas. Deinde stabilitae sunt sex 5  
 acies ex eis, intra ciuitatem. In prima vero acie, in  
 primo videlicet capite, fuit Hugo Magnus cum Franci-  
 genis et Flandrensi comite ; in secunda dux Godefridus  
 cum suo exercitu ; in tertia vero fuit Rotbertus Nort-  
 mannus cum suis militibus ; in quarta fuit Podiensis 10  
 episcopus, portans secum lanceam Saluatoris, cum sua  
 gente et cum exercitu Raimundi comitis S. Aegidii,  
 qui remansit sursum custodire castellum, pro timore  
 Turcorum, ne descenderent in ciuitatem ; in quinta acie

52 pedestris C      55 deduci C      57 nobis et filiis  
 nostris per C      58 legati igitur C      64 contristabat C  
**XXIX.** 2 ad aliam C      4 sanguini domini C      6 prima acie C  
 6-7 in primo scilicet C      8 Flandrensis comes cum suis C      9 cum  
 suis C      9-10 miles fortis Robertus Comes Normannie C ; nor-  
 manus B      10 electis militibus C      11 nostri Saluatoris C  
 13-14 om. pro timore Turcorum C      14 ne Turci descenderent C



15 fuit Tancredus, Marchisi filius, cum sua gente; in sexta  
 etenim fuit vir sapiens Boamundus cum sua militia.  
 Episcopi nostri et presbyteri et clerici ac monachi sacris  
 vestibus induti nobiscum exierunt cum crucibus, orantes  
 et depraecantes Dominum, vt nos saluos faceret et  
 20 custodiret et ab omnibus malis eriperet. Alii stabant  
 super murum portae, tenentes sacras cruces in manibus  
 suis, signando et benedicendo nos. Ita nos ordinati et  
 signo crucis protecti, exiimus per portam quae est  
 ante Machomariam. Postquam Curbaram vidit Fran-  
 25 corum acies, tam pulcre ordinatas, exire vnam post  
 aliam, dixit: 'Sinite eos exire, vt melius eos habeamus  
 in potestate nostra.' Postquam vero fuerunt foris de  
 vrbe viditque Curbaram ingentem Francorum gentem,  
 valde timuit. Mox mandauit suo ammiratio, qui omnia  
 30 habebat in custodia, vt si ille videret ignem accensum in  
 capite hostis, protinus praeconari faceret omnem exer-  
 citum redire, sciens Turcos amisisse bellum. Continuo  
 Curbaram coepit paulatim redire retro contra mon-  
 taneam, nostrique paulatim persequabantur illos. Deni-  
 35 que diuisi sunt Turci: vna pars iuit contra mare, et  
 alii steterunt illic, putantes nostros includere inter se.  
 Videntes hoc nostri, fecerunt similiter. Illic fuit ordinata  
 acies septena ex acie ducis Godefridi et comitis Nort-  
 manniae, et caput illius fuit comes Reinaldus. Hanc  
 40 miserunt obuiam Turcis, qui veniebant a mari. Turci  
 autem praeliati sunt cum illis et sagittando multos occi-  
 derunt ex nostris. Aliae autem turmae ordinatae sunt a

15 om. Marchisi filius BC	16 om. etenim BC	om. vir sapiens BC
17 et monachi B	19 deprecantes Deum C	et Dominum B
22 om. suis C	signantesque ac benedicentes C	23 nos signati C
26 melius habeamus omnes C	27-28 fuerunt omnes foras urbem C	28 om. ingentem C
29 Moxque C	33 retro cedere C	34 persequatur eum C
37 tunc fuit ibi C	38 septima C	et nobilissimi C
38-39 Normannie Roberti C	39 capud illius extitit C	om. comes CHa
42 ex eis C	Aliae vero C	ordinaverunt se C



flumine vsque ad montaneam, quod distat per duo  
 miliaria. Coeperunt vero turmae ex vtraque parte exire  
 nostrosque vndique circumcingere, iaculando, sagit- 45  
 tando, vulnerando. Exhibant quoque de montaneis  
 innumerabiles exercitus, habentes equos albos, quorum  
 vexilla omnia erant alba. Videntes itaque nostri hunc  
 exercitum, ignorabant penitus quid hoc esset et qui  
 essent, donec cognouerunt esse adiutorium Christi, cuius 50  
 ductores fuerunt Sancti Georgius, Mercurius et Deme-  
 trius. Haec verba credenda sunt, quia plures ex nostris  
 viderunt. Turci autem qui stabant in parte maris,  
 videntes quod non possent sufferre amplius, miserunt  
 ignem in herbam, vt videntes illi qui erant in tentoriis, 55  
 fugerent. At illi cognoscentes illud signum, arripuerunt  
 omnia honorabilia spolia et fugerunt. Nostri vero  
 paulatim militabant vbi maxima virtus eorum erat,  
 scilicet ad tentoria illorum. Dux Godefridus et Flan-  
 drens is comes et Hugo Magnus equitabant iuxta 60  
 aquam, vbi virtus illorum erat. Isti primitus signo  
 crucis muniti vnanimiter inuaserunt illos. Videntes hoc  
 aliae acies, simili modo inuaserunt illos, exclamauerunt  
 autem Persae et Turci. Nos itaque, inuocantes Deum  
 viuum et verum, equitauimus contra illos et in nomine 65  
 Iesu Christi et S. Sepulcri incepimus bellum et Deo  
 iuuante deuicimus eos. Turci vero tremefacti arri-  
 puerunt fugam, nostrique illos persequiebantur iuxta  
 tentoria. Itaque milites Christi magis amabant persequi  
 illos quam vlla spolia quaerere. Et persecuti sunt eos 70  
 vsque ad pontem Farreum, ac deinde vsque ad castellum

43 *om.* ad C      44 *ergo* C      *om.* exire B      46 exie-  
 runt C      50-51 Cuius exercitus ductores fuerunt C      55  
 videntes hii C      56 statim arripuerunt C      58 equita-  
 bant ubi C      virtus illorum C      59 tentoria eorum C  
 61 Hii C      64 *om.* autem C      Nos autem C      67 vicimus  
 B      69 magi amabat C      70 sunt illos B : eos sunt C



Tancredi. Illi vero dimiserunt ibi papiliones suos et aurum et argentum multaque ornamenta, oues quoque et boues, equos et mulos, camelos et asinos, frumentum et  
 75 vinum, farinam et alia multa quae nobis erant necessaria. Hermenii et Surrani qui habitabant in illis partibus, audientes nos superasse Turcos, cucurrerunt ad montaneam obuiantes illis, et quantos comprehenderunt ex illis, interfecerunt. Nos autem reuertentes ad ciuitatem  
 80 cum magno gaudio, laudauimus et benediximus Deum, qui victoriam dedit populo suo. Ammiralius itaque qui castellum custodiebat, videns Curbaram et omnes alios fugientes e campo ante Francorum exercitum, magis timuit; statim vero cum magna festinatione petebat  
 85 Francorum vexilla. Comes igitur S. Aegidii, qui illic astabat ante castellum, iussit ei portari suum vexillum. Ille autem accepit illud et diligenter misit in turrin. Statim dixerunt Longobardi, qui illic stabant: 'Hoc vexillum non est Boamundi.' Interrogauit ille et dixit:  
 90 'Cuius est?' Qui dixerunt: 'S. Aegidii comitis.' Accessit ille et apprehenso vexillo reddidit comiti. Ipsa vero hora venit vir honorabilis Boamundus deditque illi suum vexillum; ille autem illud accepit cum magno gaudio et iniit pactum cum domino Boamundo, vt pagani qui  
 95 vellent Christianitatem recipere, essent cum eo, et qui vellent abire, sanos et absque vlla laesione abire permetteret. Consensit ille quicquid ammiralius postulauit, et continuo misit suos seruientes in castellum. Non post

75 et farinam C      78 apprehenderunt C      79 reversi sumus C  
 80 gaudio magno laudantes et benedicentes C  
 83 fugisse C      84 statimque cum festinatione magna petere cepit C  
 86 ei tradi C      87 quod ille C      om. autem C  
 88 Longobardi autem qui illic astabant dixerunt C  
 90 Cuius igitur C      91 apprehensum vexillum C  
 92 vir venerabilis HaR et dedit C      93 quod ille accepit cum magno gaudio C  
 95 eos autem qui C      96 om. ulla C  
 97 Consensit ille HaR: ei G (Bongars)      98 misit duos ER: misit homines suos C



multos dies baptizatus est ammiralius cum illis qui Christum recognoscere maluerunt. Illos vero qui suas 100 voluerunt tenere leges, fecit dominus Boamundus con- duci in Saracenorum terram. Hoc bellum factum est in quarto Kalend. Iul., in vigilia apostolorum Petri et Pauli, regnante Domino nostro Iesu Christo, cui est honor et gloria in sempiterna secula. Amen. 105

**XXX.** Et cum essent omnes inimici nostri (Deo 1098 trino et vno summoque dignas referimus grates), per omnia deuicti, huc illucque fugientes, alii semiuiui, alii vulnerati, in vallibus et in nemoribus et in aruis et in viis deficiebant mortui. Populus vero Christi, victores 5 scilicet peregrini, reuersi sunt gaudentes felici triumpho, deuictis hostibus, in ciuitatem. Statim omnes nostri seniores, videlicet dux Godefridus, comes S. Aegidii Raimundus, Boamundus et comes Nortmanniae, comes- que Flandrensis et alii omnes miserunt nobilissimum 10 militem Hugonem Magnum imperatori Constantinopolim, vt ad recipiendam ciuitatem veniret, et conuentiones quas erga illos habebat, expleret ; iuit, nec postea rediit. Postquam vero haec omnia facta sunt, congregati omnes nostri maiores ordinauerunt concilium, quemadmodum 15 hunc feliciter valerent conducere et regere populum, donec peragerent iter S. Sepulcri, pro quo huc vsque multa erant passi pericula. Inuentum est in concilio,

101 volebant *B* 102 om. terram *C* 102-103 est quarto  
*CER* 103 Iulii, vigilia *BER* om. in vigilia . . . Pauli *C* 104  
 om. nostro *E*

**XXX.** 1 Cum igitur *C* : Et cum iam *Ha* 2-3 per  
 omnia deuicti unde Deo *C* grates) huc *C* 3 fugere  
 coeperunt *ER* 4 in agris *C* 5 deprehendebantur mortui *ER*  
 7 Statimque *C* 9 Boamundus, comes Nortmanniae *HaR*  
 9-10 comes Flandrensis *ER* 10-11 nobilissimum comitem  
*ER* 11 Constantinopolim ad imperatorem *C* 14 Postea *C*  
 gesta sunt *CER* om. omnes *CER* 15 et ordinaverunt *B*  
 17-18 quo hactenus tanta *C* 18 perpassi sunt *C* : perpassi  
*ER* Inuentum est *HaR* consilio *C*



quia nondum auderent intrare in paganorum terram,  
 20 eo quod valde in aestiuo tempore est arida et inaquosa ;  
 ideoque acceperunt terminum attendendum ad Kalend.  
 Nouemb. Denique diuisi sunt seniores, et vnusquisque  
 profectus est in terram suam, donec esset prope terminus  
 eundi. Feceruntque principes praeconari per urbem  
 25 vniuersam, vt si forte aliquis egens illic adesset, et auro  
 argentoque careret, conuentione facta cum illis remanere  
 si vellet, ab eis cum gaudio retentus esset. Erat autem  
 ibi quidam miles de exercitu comitis S. Aegidii, cui nomen  
 Raimundus Piletus ; hic plurimos retinuit homines,  
 30 milites ac pedites. Egressus est ille cum collecto exercitu  
 et viriliter introiit in Saracenorum terram et profectus  
 est vltra duas ciuitates et peruenit ad quoddam castrum,  
 cui nomen Talamania. Habitatores castri, scilicet  
 Suriani, confestim sua sponte se tradiderunt ei. Cumque  
 35 omnes essent ibi fere per octo dies, nuntii venerunt ad  
 eum dicentes : ‘ Quoniam hic prope nos est castrum  
 Sarracenorum multitudine plenum.’ Ad hoc castrum  
 ilico ierunt Christi milites peregrini et vndique inuaserunt  
 illud, quod continuo ab illis captum est, Christi adiu-  
 40 torio. Apprehenderunt igitur omnes illius loci colonos,  
 et qui Christianitatem recipere noluerunt, occiderunt ;  
 qui vero Christum recognoscere maluerunt, viuos con-  
 seruarunt. Reuersi sunt itaque hoc peracto nostri

20 *om.* valde C nimis sit arida C 21 usque ad  
 C 22 Divisi sunt igitur C 23 donec advenisset pro-  
 ficiscendi terminus C esset terminus *HaR* 24-25 universam  
 urbem *Ha* : Civitatem quod C 25 ibi adesset C 26  
 et argento *HaR* cum eis C *om.* remanere *CE* 27 cum  
 gaudio retineretur ab illis C 30 *om.* ille C 31 introivit *B*  
 31-32 profectus ultra C 32 civitates pervenit C 33 Thala-  
 mania C Habitatores autem C 35-36 *om.* ad eum C  
 36 castrum quoddam C 37 Ad hec C 38 perrexerunt  
 C 39 *om.* illud *CE* 39-40 statimque captum est ab illis  
 adiutorio Christi C 40 Apprehendere C : adiutorio apprehen-  
 derunt *B* *om.* loci C incolas C 42 recognoscere Christum  
 voluerunt C 42-43 conservaverunt *BC* 43 hiis peractis C



Franci cum magno gaudio ad prius castrum. Tertia vero die exierunt et venerunt ad quandam urbem, cui 45 nomen Marra, quae illic erat prope illos. Erant autem ibi multi Turci congregati et Saraceni ab Aleph ciuitate et ab omnibus urbibus et castris quae circa illam sunt. Exierunt ergo barbari contra illos ad bellum, nostrique aestimantes luctari cum illis praeliando, coegerunt eos in 50 fugam, et tamen reuersi, per totum diem inuadebant nostros adinuicem, et vsque ad vesperam perdurauit illa inuasio. Aestus namque erat immensus. Nequibant iam nostri sufferre tantam sitim, quoniam nullatenus ad bibendum inuenire ibi aquam poterant; voluerunt 55 tamen ad illorum castrum secure redire. Pro illorum enim peccatis Suriani et minuta gens nimio pauore correpti, mox coeperunt viam carpere retrorsum. Vt autem Turci viderunt illos retrocedentes, statim coeperunt illos persequi, et victoria illis ministrabat vires: 60 multi namque ex ipsis reddiderunt animas Deo, cuius amore illic congregati fuerant. Haec occisio facta est quinto die, in mense Iulio. Reuersi sunt autem Franci illi, qui remanserant, in suum castrum, et fuit ibi Raimundus cum sua gente per plures dies. Alii vero qui in 65 Antiochia remanserant, steterunt in ea cum gaudio et laetitia magna, quorum rector et pastor extitit Podiensis episcopus, qui, nutu Dei, graui aegritudine captus est,

44 et ad E 45 post die C quandam civitatem C 47  
 Alech E 48 quae erant C circa illas BER om. sunt C  
 49 Exieruntque C om. ergo barbari C contra illis G (Bongars)  
 contra nos C nostri igitur C 50 luctari posse C 50-51  
 miserunt eos in fugam qui tamen revertentes C 52 duravit C  
 53 Aestus autem C: quippe R 54 ibi nullatenus C:  
 nullatenus ibi BER 55 invenire (om. ibi BCER) pote-  
 rant aquam C (om. aquam B) 55-56 volueruntque secure  
 redire ad suum castrum C 56-57 illorum vero C 58 correcti  
 B 59 viderunt eos C 60 eos persequi C: om. illos E qui-  
 bus victoria C om. illis C 61 multi vero ex nostris C  
 pro cuius C 63 quinta feria C 66 remanserunt C  
 67 om. magna C pastor erat C



et, vt Dei voluntas fuit, migrauit ab hoc seculo, et in  
 70 pace requiescens obdormiuit in Domino, in solennitate  
 scilicet S. Petri, quae dicitur ad Vincula. Vnde magna  
 angustia et tribulatio immensusque dolor fuit in tota  
 Christi militia, quia ille erat sustentamentum pauperum,  
 consilium diuitum, ipseque ordinabat clericos, praedi-  
 75 cabat et summonebat milites, dicens: 'Quia nemo ex  
 vobis saluari potest nisi honorificet pauperes et re-  
 ficiat; vosque non potestis saluari sine illis, ipsique viuere  
 nequeunt sine vobis. Oportet igitur vt ipsi quoti-  
 diana supplicatione pro vestris orent delictis Deum,  
 80 quem in multis cotidie offenditis; vnde vos rogo vt  
 pro Dei amore eos diligatis, et in quantum potestis eos  
 sustentetis.'

1098 **XXXI.** Non post multum vero temporis venit vir  
 venerabilis Raimundus, comes de S. Aegidio, et intrauit  
 in Saracēnorum terram et peruenit in quandam urbem  
 quae vocatur Albara, quam inuasit vna cum suo exercitu,  
 5 eamque continuo coepit; et occidit omnes Saracenos et  
 Saracenas, maiores et minores, quos ibi reperit. Quam  
 postquam suo continuit imperio, ad Christi reuocauit  
 fidem, quaesiuitque consilium a suis sapientissimis viris,  
 vt episcopum in hac vrbe deuotissime praeordinari  
 10 faceret, qui illam ad Christi cultum fideliter reuocaret  
 et de domo diabolica templum Deo viuo et vero et  
 oracula Sanctorum consecraret. Nouissime elegerunt  
 quendam honorabilem ac sapientissimum virum et  
 duxere illum in Antiochiam ad consecrandum; factum-

71 om. scilicet C      73 quoniam ille C      77 neque ipsi C  
 78 om. nequeunt BCER      79 oreus B  
**XXXI.** 1 om. venit vir C      2 om. venerabilis Raimun-  
 dus C om. et C      3 ad quamdam HaTud      5-6 Saracenos  
 masculos et feminas tam maiores quam minores C      8 sapien-  
 tibus ER      9-10 in ea ordinari deuotissime faceret C      10  
 ad fidem Christi cultumque CER      14 duxerunt C



que est ita. Alii autem qui in Antiochia remanserant, <sup>15</sup>  
 fuerunt ibidem cum gaudio et laetitia. Appropinquante  
 vero termino, videlicet festo Omnium Sanctorum, regressi  
 sunt omnes maiores nostri in vnum, in Antiochiam,  
 omnesque simul coeperunt quaerere qualiter S. Sepulcri  
 iter valerent peragere, dicentes: 'Quoniam appropinqua- <sup>20</sup>  
 uerat eundi terminus, nulla erat hora conturbandi  
 amplius.' Boamundus autem quaerebat cotidie con-  
 uentionem quam omnes seniores olim habuerant ei  
 in reddendam ciuitatem; sed comes S. Aegidii ad nullam  
 conuentionem volebat se emollire erga Boamundum, eo <sup>25</sup>  
 quod timebat se peierare erga imperatorem; tamen  
 saepe fuerunt congregati in ecclesia S. Petri ad faciendum  
 quod iustum erat. Boamundus recitauit suam con-  
 uentionem suumque ostendit compotum. Comes S.  
 Aegidii similiter sua patefecit verba et iusiurandum quod <sup>30</sup>  
 fecerat imperatori per consilium Boamundi. Episcopi  
 et dux Godefridus, Flandrensisque comes et comes de  
 Nortmannia alique seniores diuisi sunt ab aliis, et  
 intrauerunt vbi est cathedra S. Petri, vt ibi iudicium inter  
 vtrumque discernerent. Postea vero timentes ne S. <sup>35</sup>  
 Sepulcri via perturbaretur, noluerunt aperte dicere iudi-  
 cium. Ait denique comes S. Aegidii: 'Priusquam via S.  
 Sepulcri remaneat, si Boamundus nobiscum venire volue-  
 rit, quicquid nostri pares, videlicet dux Godefridus et Flan-  
 drensis comes et Rotbertus Nortmannus alique seniores <sup>40</sup>

<sup>15-16</sup> om. Alii autem . . . laetitia CE <sup>17</sup> festiuitate C  
<sup>18</sup> nostri et convenerunt C Antiochia CE <sup>19</sup> in-  
 quirere C <sup>20-21</sup> eundi terminus appropinquavit nulla mora  
 C <sup>21</sup> conturbandum G (*Bongars*): conturbandi HaR: differ-  
 endi est C <sup>23</sup> olim erga C <sup>24</sup> reddenda ciuitate  
 C <sup>25</sup> om. erga E <sup>26-27</sup> unde sepe C <sup>27</sup> om. S. Petri E  
<sup>31-33</sup> Episcopi, Rotbertus, comes de Nortmannia, et dux Gode-  
 fridus, Flandrensisque comes et alii ER: Episcopi et Robertus  
 comes Normannie et dux Godefridus Flandrensisque comes et  
 reliqui C <sup>35</sup> decernerent C <sup>39-40</sup> Godefridus domnusque  
 Rotbertus, Nortmannie comes, et Flandrensis comes (dominusque  
 Robertus Normannie Comes et Comes Flandren C) alique CER



laudauerint, ego fideliter consentiam, salua fidelitate imperatoris.' Hoc totum laudauit Boamundus, et promiserunt ambo in manibus episcoporum, quod nullo modo per se via S. Sepulcri deturbaretur. Tunc accepit Boamundus  
 45 consilium cum suis hominibus, quo modo muniret castrum de alta montanea hominibus et victu. Similiter comes S. Aegidii accepit consilium cum suis quomodo muniret palatium Cassiani ammiralii et turrin quae est super portam pontis, qui est ex parte portus Sancti Simeonis, muniret, in-  
 50 quam, hominibus et victu, qui non deficeret longo tempore.

**1098 XXXII.** Haec urbs Antiochia scilicet valde est pulcra  
 Situs et honorabilis; quia infra muros eius sunt quatuor  
 Urbis montanae maximae et nimis altae. In altiori quoque est  
 Antio- castellum aedificatum, mirabile et nimis forte. De  
 chiae. 5 deorsum est ciuitas honorabilis et conueniens, omnibus-  
 que ornata honoribus, quoniam multae ecclesiae sunt in  
 ea aedificatae; tercenta et sexaginta monasteria in se  
 continet. Sub suo iugo continet patriarcha centum  
 quinquaginta tres episcopos. Clauditur ciuitas duobus  
 10 muris; maior quoque valde est altus, et mirabiliter latus,  
 magnisque lapidibus compositus, in quo sunt ordinatae  
 quater centum et quinquaginta turre; modisque  
 omnibus est ciuitas formosa; ab oriente clauditur  
 quatuor magnis montaneis; ab occidente secus muros  
 15 urbis fluit quoddam flumen cui nomen Farfar: et ita  
 noluerunt stulte neque inane dimittere regalem ciuitatem  
 Antiochiam, quae tantae auctoritatis fuit, quod eam

**44** Sancti Sepulcri via perturbaretur C Boamundus accepit  
 ER: cepit C **45** om. muniret C **49** pontis, add. qui est ex  
 parte portus Sancti Simeonis HaRTud: om. qui . . . Simeonis  
 G (Bongars) **49-50** om. inquam C

**XXXII. Titulus** De Situ Civitatis Antiochie C: om. Situs Urbis  
 Antiochiae BER **3** montanea est C **5** Deorsum ER: Deor-  
 sum vero C **6** ornata muneribus et C **8** continet intra se C  
**9** Clauditur autem C **10** maior murus multum C om. quoque  
 valde C **12** cccl turre C **14** vero secus C **15-17** om.  
 et ita . . . Antiochiam codd. R **17** que (videlicet C)  
 civitas magne auctoritatis est, nam eam codd. R



prius septuaginta quinque reges constituerunt, quorum fuit caput Antiochus rex, a quo dicitur Antiochia. Istam ciuitatem tenuerunt Franci obsessam per octo 20 menses et vnum diem. Postea fuerunt intus inclusi tres hebdomadas a Turcis et ab aliis paganis, quorum numero nunquam fuit maior congregatio hominum, vel Christianorum vel paganorum. Tamen, adiutorio Dei et S. Sepulcri, deuictis illis a Christianis, requieuius cum 25 gaudio et laetitia magna in Antiochia per quinque menses et octo dies.

**XXXIII.** Quibus expletis, mense Nouembrio discessit 1098 Raimundus comes S. Aegidii cum suo exercitu ab Antiochia, venitque per vnam ciuitatem, quae vocatur Rugia, et per aliam, quae dicitur Albaria. Quarto vero die exeunte Nouembrio peruenit ad Marram ciuitatem, 5 in qua maxima multitudo Saracenorum et Turcorum et Arabum aliorumque paganorum erat congregata, ipseque comes in crastinum inuasit eam. Non post multum vero temporis Boamundus cum suo exercitu secutus est comites et applicitus est cum eis in die 10 dominica. Secunda vero feria nimis fortiter inuaserunt vndique ciuitatem, et tam acriter tamque fortiter, vt scalae starent erectae ad murum. Sed tam maxima virtus paganorum erat, quod illa die nihil eos offendere aut nocere potuerunt. Videntes autem seniores quia nihil 15 agere poterant et frustra laborabant, fecit Raimundus comes de Sancto Aegidio fieri quoddam ligneum castrum

20 Hanc civitatem C obsederunt Franci C om. obsessam C  
21 in qua et ipsi postea C fuerunt obsessi C 22  
per III hebdomadas (ebdomadas C) C HaR 24 Sed tamen C  
25 Christianis Dei HaR : et servis Dei C requievimus in pace  
in ea C 26 om. in Antiochia C

**XXXIII.** 1 decessit C 3 et venit C 7 et aliorum HaR  
8 eamque C om. comes C om. in crastinum E inuasit. Non  
C 10 applicuit ad eos C : applicatus est Ha 15-16  
cum autem nichil agere possent sed frustra laborarent C  
17 Sancti Aegidii ER



forte et altum. Quod castrum ingeniatur et aedificatum  
erat super quatuor rotas, super quod stabant plures  
20 milites et Euuardus venator, tubam fortiter sonans ;  
subter vero armati milites erant, qui deduxerunt  
castrum vsque prope vrbis murum iuxta turrin quan-  
dam. Quod videns gens pagana, statim fecerunt instru-  
mentum quo iactabant maximos lapides super castrum,  
25 ita vt pene nostros milites occiderent. Iaciebant quo-  
que Graecos ignes super castrum, putantes illud ardere  
et deuastari. Sed Deus omnipotens noluit, vt castrum  
arderet hac vice ; supereminebat vero omnes muros  
ciuitatis. Milites igitur nostri qui erant in superiori  
30 solario, videlicet Wilhelmus de Monte Pislerio et alii  
multi, iactabant immensos lapides super illos qui  
stabant in muro vrbis, et ita percutiebant eos super  
clipeos, vt clipeus et inimicus caderent deorsum in  
ciuitatem in mortem. Ita faciebant isti, alii vero tene-  
35 bant in hastis honorabilia signa, et cum lanceis et hamis  
ferreis putabant eos trahere ad se, et sic praeliati sunt  
vsque ad vesperam. Retro castrum stabant presbyteri,  
clerici, sacris vestibus induti, orantes et obsecrantes  
Deum, vt suum defenderet populum et Christianitatem  
40 exaltaret ac paganismum deponeret. In alia vero parte  
certabant nostri milites cotidie cum illis, erigentes scalas  
ad murum vrbis ; sed virtus paganorum erat tanta, vt  
nihil proficere nostri possent. Tamen Gulferius de

20 Evrardus *HaR* : Ebrardus *Tud* tuba *ER* 22 muris  
*C* 23 *om.* fecerunt *C* 23-24 Instrumentum quoddam *C*  
25 *om.* ita *C* 26 comburere *C* 27 devastare *CER*  
27-28 ut illud hac vice combureretur *C* 28 superemine-  
bat autem *C* enim *Ha* omnibus muris *C* 29 deni-  
que nostri *C* 30 solatio *E* scilicet *B* 31 *om.* super illos *C*  
32 erant stantes super murum *C* *om.* vrbis *C* 36 *om.* ferreis  
*C* conabantur illos ad se trahere sicque *C* 38 cleri  
*B* : et clerici *C* 41 ille *C* 42 exercitus paganorum *C*  
43 *om.* nostri *C*



Daturre primus ascendit per scalam in murum, sed  
 statim fuit fracta scala pro multitudine aliorum ; tamen 45  
 ascendit ipse cum aliquantis supra murum ; illi autem  
 qui ascendeabant, expediebant circa illos murum. Alii  
 quoque inuenerunt aliam scalam, erexeruntque eam  
 festinanter ad murum, et ascenderunt per eam multi  
 milites et pedites, statimque ascenderunt super murum. 50  
 Saraceni igitur tam robuste inuaserunt illos per murum  
 et per terram sagittando et spiculando cominus cum suis  
 lanceis, vt multi ex nostris timore perterriti demitterent  
 se per murum. Tamdiu vero illi prudentissimi viri qui  
 remanserant in muro sufferebant illorum persecutionem, 55  
 quamdiu alii, qui subter castrum erant, foderunt murum  
 vrbis. Videntes vero Saraceni quod nostri fodissent  
 murum, statim timore perterriti inierunt fugam in  
 ciuitatem. Hoc totum factum est in die Sabbati, ad  
 horam vesperi, occidente sole, vndecima die, intrante 60  
 Decembri. Boamundus igitur fecit per interpretem  
 loqui Saracenis maioribus, vt ipsi cum suis mulieribus  
 et infantibus aliisque substantiis mitterent se in vnum  
 palatium, quod est supra portam, ipseque defenderet eos  
 de mortali sententia. Intrauerunt vero omnes nostri 65  
 in ciuitatem et quicquid boni inuenerunt in domibus et  
 foueis, hoc vnusquisque ad suum continebat proprium.

44 super murum C : in murum HaTud om. sed ER 45  
 statimque ER 45 multitudine ascendentium post illum C  
 45-46 ascenderunt tamen aliqui cum eo C 46 murum : add.  
 Illi autem (itaque C) qui ascendeabant (ascenderant BC), expedie-  
 bant circa illos murum BCERHa : om. illi autem . . . murum G  
 (Bongars) 48 erexerunt ER illam C 50 om. pedites C mu-  
 ram pedites C 51 autem tam C et per ER 53 om. timore  
 CE dimitterent C 54 super murum CER Illi vero C  
 55 remanserunt C super murum tamdiu sustinuerunt C 56  
 quousque alii C effoderunt C 57 effodissent C 58  
 om. murum E om. statim C 59 civitate E 61 porro  
 Boamundus C om. igitur C per interpretem fecit CER 63  
 et filiis C 64 illos C 65 itaque C om. omnes C  
 67 in foveis HaR 67-68 retinebat ad suum opus. Facto C



Facto autem die, vbicunque reperiebant quenquam illorum, siue masculum siue foeminam, occidebant. 70 Nullus angulus ciuitatis deerat vacuus Saracenorum cadaueribus, vixque poterat aliquis per vias ire ciuitatis, nisi calcando super Saracenorum cadauera. Boamundus denique illos quos iusserat in palatium intrare apprehendit, illisque abstulit omnia quae habebant, videlicet 75 aurum, argentum, aliaque ornamenta ; alios vero fecit occidi, alios autem iussit conduci ad vendendum Antiochiae. Mora autem Francorum fuit in illa vrbe per vnum mensem et quatuor dies, in qua fuit mortuus Oriensis episcopus. Fuerunt ibi ex nostris qui illic non 80 inuenerunt sicuti opus eis erat, tantum ex longa mora, quantum ex districtione famis, quia foris nequiuerant aliquid inuenire ad capiendum ; sed scindebant corpora mortuorum, eo quod in ventribus eorum inueniebant bisanteos reconditos ; alii vero cedebant carnes eorum 85 per frusta, et coquebant ad manducandum.

1098 **XXXIIII.** Boamundus autem non potuit apud comitem S. Aegidii concordari super id quod petebat, 1099 iratusque reuersus est Antiochiam. Comes igitur Raimundus, non diu moratus, mandauit per suos legatos 5 Antiochiae, duci Godefrido et Flandrensi comiti ac Rotberto Nortmanno et Boamundo, vt ipsi venirent ad Rugiam ciuitatem, loqui cum eo. Veneruntque illuc omnes seniores, feceruntque concilium quomodo honeste

68 ubicunque invenerunt C      69 occidere C      70 Sarra-  
cenorum C      70-71 erat vacuus cadaueribus illorum C  
71 quis C      72 om. calcando C      mortuorum cadauera C  
75 et alios quidem C      76 alios vero C      deduci C  
76-77 in Antiochiam BER: Antiochiam ad vendendum C      79  
Fuerunt quidam C      80-81 opus illis esset tam . . . quam C  
om. ex E      81 fame C      82 scindebant autem C  
83 om. eorum E      85 coquentes manducabant C  
**XXXIIII.** 1 om. autem CER      3 Comes autem CER  
6 Nortmanniae ER: Normannorum C      om. ipsi C      7  
Venerunt igitur C      8 et tenuerunt consilium C      et fecerunt  
Ha: et concilium fecerunt Tud



possent tenere viam S. Sepulcri, pro qua moti sunt, et  
huc vsque peruentum sit. Nequiuerunt concordare <sup>10</sup>  
Boamundum cum Raimundo, nisi Raimundus comes  
Antiochiam redderet ei. Noluit comes ad hoc assentire,  
pro fiducia quam fecerat imperatori. Comites denique  
et dux reuersi sunt in Antiochiam unam cum Boamundo.  
Comes vero Raimundus reuersus est ad Marram, vbi <sup>15</sup>  
peregrini erant; mandauit quoque suis militibus  
honestare palatium et castellum quod erat supra portam  
pontis ciuitatis. Videns autem Raimundus quod nullus  
seniorum voluisset, causa eius, ire in viam S. Sepulcri,  
exiuit nudis pedibus de Marra decima tertia die intrante <sup>20</sup>  
Ianuario, et peruenit vsque Capharda, fuitque ibi  
per tres dies. Illic adiunxit se comes Normanniae comiti  
Raimundo. Rex autem Caesareae multotiens manda-  
uerat per suos nuntios comiti Marrae et Caphardae, quod  
cum eo pacem vellet habere et de suo precium ei daret <sup>25</sup>  
et Christianos peregrinos diligeret fiduciamque faceret,  
quia quantum continet eius imperium peregrinis non  
esset offendiculum, et mercatum de equis et de corporali-  
bus alimentis daret gaudenter. Exierunt autem nostri  
et venerunt hospitari iuxta Cesaream, super fluuium <sup>30</sup>  
Farfar. Cumque vidisset rex Caesareae contubernium  
Francorum tam prope ciuitatem hospitatum esse,  
doluit animo, et iussit illis deuetari mercatum, nisi

9 potuerint C moti fuerant C 10 hucusque C per-  
uentum fuerat C 11 cum Ramundo Boamundum C  
om. comes B 12 illi Antiochiam C: Antiochiam redderet  
ei B assentiri C 13 propter fiduciam C Comites  
namque ER 14 sunt Antiochiam CER 15 Raimun-  
dus Sancti Egidii rediit ad C 17 super C 17-18  
(portam pontis *HaRTud*) portam ciuitatis G (*Bongars*) 19  
ipsius causa vellet ire C 21 ad Caphardam C 22 nobilis-  
simus comes Normanniae (Nortmanniae ER): Robertus (Rotber-  
tus ER) CER 24 suos legatos C 25 illi daret  
C 29 libenter daret C Exierunt igitur C 32  
ciuitatem habitatum C



discederent a ciuitatis confinio. Crastina vero die misit  
 35 cum illis duos Turcos, suos videlicet nuntios, qui eis  
 monstrarent fluminis vadum, eosque conducerent, ad  
 capiendum vbi inuenire potuissent. Denique venerunt  
 in vallem quandam subter castrum quoddam, ibi  
 depredati sunt plus quam quinque animalium millia,  
 40 et satis frumenti atque alia bona, vnde valde fuit  
 refecta Christi militia. Tamen illud castrum reddidit  
 se comiti, eique dedit equos et aurum purissimum, et  
 iurauerunt sua lege quod peregrinis exinde nil fieret  
 mali; fuimusque ibi per quinque dies. Egressi etenim  
 45 inde peruenimus gaudentes hospitari ad quoddam  
 Arabum castrum. Exiuit igitur dominus castri et con-  
 cordatus est cum comite. Exeuntes vero inde perue-  
 nimus ad quandam ciuitatem pulcherrimam et omnibus  
 bonis refertam in quadam valle sitam nomine Kephaliā.  
 50 Habitatores vero illius, audientes Francos venisse,  
 dimiserunt urbem et hortos plenos oleribus et domos  
 plenas alimentis corporalibus, et fugerunt. Tertia die  
 egressi ab illa vrbe, transiuimus per altam et immensam  
 montaneam et intrauimus in vallem de Sem, in qua erat  
 55 maxima vbertas omnibus bonis; fuimusque ibi per dies  
 fere quindecim. Hic prope nos erat quoddam castrum,  
 in quo erat congregata maxima paganorum multitudo.  
 Quod castrum aggressi sunt nostri, idque fortiter  
 superassent, nisi Saraceni iactassent foras immensas tur-

35 legatos C      36 demonstrarent ER      37 inuenire possent  
 HaR      38 quoddam castrum Ha: ad quoddam C      ibique  
 HaTud: ibique que C      42 deditque illi C      43-44 nihil  
 deinceps facerent mali C      44 om. etenim C      46  
 aliud castrum C: om. Arabum E      Exiuitque C      om. igitur C  
 49 refectam ER      50 Habitatores autem C      51 ortos B  
 52 omnibus alimentis C      Tertia vero C      53 egressi ex C  
 om. transiuimus CE      54 montanam intravimus C      om. in B  
 vallem de Lem G (Bongars): vallem de Sem R: densam E: desen  
 C: vallem Desem Ha: in vallem Dessem Tud (codd. ACD): in  
 vallem de Issem Tud (codd. BE)      55 omnium bonorum CER  
 59 foris C



mas animalium ; reuersi sunt nostri deferentes omnia 60  
 bona ad sua tentoria. Summo autem diluculo collegerunt  
 nostri suos papiliones et venerunt obsidere idem castrum,  
 ibique putabant extendere tentoria, sed gens pagana  
 omnino dedit sese fugae ac dimiserunt castrum vacuum.  
 Intrantes autem nostri inuenerunt ibi omnem abundan- 65  
 tiam frumenti, vini, farinae, olei et quicquid eis opus erat.  
 Illic deuotissime celebrauimus festiuitatem Purificationis  
 Sanctae Mariae, veneruntque illuc nuntii de Camela  
 ciuitate. Rex namque illius mandauit comiti equos,  
 aurum, et pactus est cum eo quod Christianos nullo 70  
 modo offenderet, sed eos diligeret et honoraret. Rex  
 autem Tripolis mandauit comiti, quoniam cum eo fide-  
 liter pactum iniret et amicitiam haberet, si ei placeret,  
 misitque illi equos decem, et quatuor mulas, et aurum.  
 Sed comes ait nullo modo cum eo pacem se recipere, nisi 75  
 ille Christianus efficeretur. Exeuntes autem de optima  
 valle, peruenimus ad quoddam castrum quod dicitur  
 Archae, in die lunae, scilicet secunda feria, mediante  
 Februario ; circa quod tentoria detendimus. Quod  
 castrum plenum erat innumerabili gente paganorum ; 80  
 videlicet Turcorum, Saracenorum, Arabum, Publicano-  
 rum ; mirabiliter munierunt castrum illud, et defende-  
 bant se fortiter. Tunc exeuntes quatuordecim ex nostris  
 militibus ierunt contra Tripolim urbem, quae erat

60 sunt igitur C      61 colligerunt C      63 putabant-  
 que ibi sua figere tentoria C      64 dedit se HaR      65 In-  
 trantes itaque nostri in illud C      66 quicquid illis C      om.  
 opus C      68 beate Marie C      legati C      69 transmisit comiti C  
 70 et aurum C      71 offendet E      71-72 Rex autem  
 Tripoli B      74 misitque equos E      75 nullatenus se pacem  
 cum illo facere C      75-76 nisi Christianus C      76 Euntes ER  
 de eadem C      77 cui nomen C      79 tetendimus HaR : ten-  
 toria fixerant Tud      79-80 Erat autem plenum C : om. cas-  
 trum CER : erat plenum ER      81-82 Publicanorum paga-  
 norum BER      82 et qui (qui CHa) mirabiliter munierunt  
 (munierant C) illud BCER      82-83 seque fortiter defendebant C



85 secus nos. Isti quatuordecim inuenerunt circa sexaginta  
 Turcos et alios quosdam, qui habebant ante se collectos  
 homines et animalia plus quam mille quingenta. Qui  
 signo crucis muniti inuaserunt eos, et Deo iuuante  
 mirabiliter superaauerunt illos et occiderunt sex ex illis,  
 90 et apprehenderunt sex equos. De exercitu vero Rai-  
 mundi comitis exierunt Raimundus Piletus et Raimundus  
 vicecomes de Tentoria, veneruntque ante Tortosam  
 ciuitatem et fortiter aggrediuntur illam, quae nimis erat  
 munita multitudine paganorum. Sero autem iam facto,  
 95 secesserunt in quendam angulum, ibique hospitati sunt,  
 feceruntque innumerabiles ignes, quasi tota hostis esset  
 ibi. Pagani vero timore perterriti nocte latenter  
 fugerunt et dimiserunt ciuitatem plenam omnibus bonis,  
 quae etiam valde optimum portum secus mare in se  
 100 retinet. Crastina autem die venerunt nostri, vt vndi-  
 que inuaderent illam, inueneruntque illam vacuum, et  
 intrantes habitauerunt in ea vsque dum obsessio esset  
 ante urbem Archae. Est prope istam alia vrbs quae  
 dicitur Maraclea ; amiralius qui eam regebat pactus  
 105 est cum nostris, et misit nostros in ciuitatem nostrarque  
 vexilla.

1099 **XXXV.** Dux quoque Godefridus, et Boamundus,  
 Flandrensisque comes venerunt vsque ad Lichiam ciui-  
 tatem. Dissepauit enim se Boamundus ab eis et reuer-  
 sus est Antiochiam. Illi vero venerunt et obsederunt

88-89 *om.* Deo . . . illos et *ER* 89-90 superaauerunt et  
 apprehenderunt sex ex illis et occiderunt sex equos quos ceperunt  
*C* : illis apprehenderunt (*om.* et) *B* 92 ad tortosam *C*  
 93 aggressi sunt *C* erat autem nimis *C* 94 Sero itaque  
*C* 96 ita ut tota *B* 96-97 ibi adesset *C* 98  
 dimittentes *C* 100 in crastino . *om.* autem die *C*  
 101 *om.* illam *CER* 102 hospitati sunt in ea *CER*  
 quamdiu *om.* dum *C* obsidio *CER* fuit *C* 103 Est  
 autem *C* 104 Maraclea. Cuius amiralius *C* *om.* qui eam  
 regebat *C* 105 recepit nostros *C* et nostra *ER*  
**XXXV.** 3 autem se *C* 4 obsiderunt *C*



quandam urbem cui nomen Gibellum. Audiens ita- 5  
 que Raimundus, comes de S. Aegidio, quod innumera-  
 bilis paganorum gens rueret super nos ad certum bellum,  
 illico consilium habuit cum suis, vt mandet senioribus qui  
 sunt in obsidione Gibelli, quatinus eis subuenirent.  
 Quod illi audientes statim pacti sunt cum ammiralio, 10  
 facientes pacem cum eo, et acceperunt equos et aurum,  
 dimiseruntque urbem venientes ad nos in adiutorium.  
 Sed illi non venerunt ad bellum contra nos. Itaque  
 comites praedicti hospitati sunt vltra flumen, ibique  
 obsederunt castrum illud. Non multo post equitauerunt 15  
 nostri contra Tripolim inueneruntque extra ciuitatem  
 Turcos, Arabes et Sarracenos, quos inuaserunt nostri  
 et miserunt eos in fugam et occiderunt maximam partem  
 nobilium vrbis. Tanta fuit paganorum occisio et san-  
 guinis effusio, vt etiam aqua quae in ciuitate fluebat, 20  
 videretur rubere et fluere in cisternas eorum; vnde  
 valde fuerunt tristes alii dolentesque. Iam vero erant  
 tanto timore perterriti, vt nullus eorum auderet exire  
 extra ciuitatis portam. Alia vero die equitauerunt vltra  
 Desem, et inuenerunt boues et oues et asinos, multaque 25  
 animalia; camelos quoque depredati sunt, fere tria millia.  
 Obsedimus vero castrum supradictum per tres menses,  
 minus vna die; ibique Pascha Domini celebrauimus IV.  
 Idus Aprilis. Naues quippe nostrae venerunt prope nos  
 in quendam portum, quamdiu fuimus in illa obsidione, 30  
 deferentes maximum mercatum, scilicet frumentum,

5-6 Audiens autem C 6 Sancti Aegidii ER 8 quod C  
 mandaret CER 8-9 qui erant C 9 ut ei obviam venirent.  
 quo illi audito C 11 ab illo equos C 12 dimittentesque  
 C venerunt ad nos C 13 om. Sed C illi vero de  
 quibus audieramus C 17 invadentes C: tenuerunt E 17-18  
 om. nostri et C 18 om. eos C om. partem C 19 Tantoque  
 C 20 ut aqua E 21 cisternas Civium C 21-22 iidem  
 ciues valde tristes dolentesque fuerunt C: om. alii ER om.  
 erant ER 25-26 aliaque animalia multa C om. sunt C  
 27 Obsedimus itaque C



vinum et carnem et caseum et hordeum et oleum,  
 vnde maxima vbertas fuit in tota expeditione. In illa  
 denique obsidione feliciter acceperunt martyrium plures  
 35 ex nostris, videlicet Anselmus de Riboatmont, Will-  
 helmus Picardus, et alii plures quos ignoro. Rex quoque  
 Tripolis saepe nuntios mittebat senioribus, vt dimitte-  
 rent castrum, et cum eo concordarentur. Audientes  
 itaque nostri hoc, scilicet et dux Godefridus et Raimundus  
 40 comes S. Aegidii, ac Rotbertus Normannus, Flandrensis-  
 que comes, videntesque novos fructus properasse,  
 quia in medio Martio comedebamus nouellas fabas,  
 medio quoque Aprili frumentum, consiliati sunt nostri  
 dicentes: 'Bonum valde esse Hierosolimitanum iter ex-  
 plere cum nouis fructibus.'

1099 **XXXVI.** Discessimus igitur a castro et peruenimus  
 Tripolim in sexta feria, decimo tertio die intrante Maio,  
 ibique fuimus per tres dies. Tandem concordatus est  
 rex Tripolis cum senioribus, illisque continuo dissoluit  
 5 plusquam trecentos peregrinos, qui illic capti erant,  
 deditque illis quindecim milia bisanteos, et quindecim  
 equos magni pretii; dedit etiam nobis magnum mer-  
 catum equorum, asinorum, omniumque bonorum, vnde  
 nimis ditata est omnis Christi militia. Pactus est vero  
 10 cum illis, quia si bellum quod eis Ammiralius Babyloniae  
 parabat, possent deuincere et Hierusalem apprehendere,

32 carnem caseum C      33 In eadem C      35 Robodimonte  
 ER: Rybodimonte C: Ribomont Ha: Risbemundus, Risbe-  
 mund Tud (codd. BE)      36 om. plures C      36-39 Porro rex  
 Tripolis sepe mittebat ad seniores rogans ut castrum dimitte-  
 rent et cum eo concordiam facerent. Quod audientes nostri  
 scilicet dux C: om. nostri B      39 scilicet dux B      40 om. S.  
 Aegidii ER      ac inclitusque (Inclitus que C) comes (miles  
 Robertus C) CER      Nortmanniae ER      40-41 et comes  
 Flandrensis C      41 propinquasse C      43 om. nostri C  
**XXXVI. 2** Tripolim sexta ER      5 illic in vinculis teneban-  
 tur necnon et quindecim C      6 bisanteorum ER: bizanteos C  
 7 pretii dedit eis, donavit etiam nobis C      9 est etiam C



ille Christianus efficeretur, terramque ab eis recognosceret, atque tali modo factum est placitum. Nos autem discessimus ab vrbe in secunda feria mensis Maii, transiuimusque per viam artam et arduam tota die ac nocte <sup>15</sup> et peruenimus ad castrum cui nomen Bethelon; deinde ad urbem quae dicitur Zebari, secus mare, in qua passus sumus nimiam sitim, et sic defessi peruenimus ad flumen, cui nomen Braym. Deinde transiuimus nocte ac die Ascensionis Domini per montem, in quo est via nimis <sup>20</sup> angusta, et illic putauimus inimicos insidiantes nobis inuenire, sed Deo annuente, nullus eorum audebat properare ante nos. Nostri denique milites, praecedentes nos, liberauerunt ante nos viam illam, et applicuimus ad ciuitatem iuxta mare quae dicitur Baruth, et inde <sup>25</sup> venimus ad aliam urbem quae vocatur Sagitta, de hinc ad aliam, quae dicitur Sur, et de Sur ad Acram ciuitatem. De Acra vero venimus ad castrum cui nomen Cayphas, ac deinceps hospitati sumus iuxta Caesaream, ibique celebrauimus Pentecosten, tertia die, exeunte Maio. <sup>30</sup> Denique venimus ad urbem Ramola, quam Saraceni dimiserant vacuam, propter metum Francorum, iuxta quam erat honorabilis ecclesia in qua requieuit preciosissimum S. Georgii corpus, quia illic a perfidis paganis pro Christi nomine feliciter martyrium suscepit. Ibi <sup>35</sup> consiliati sunt nostri maiores, vt illic eligerent episcopum, qui hanc custodiret et erigeret ecclesiam, cui suas dederunt decimas, et auro argentoque ditauerunt, et

12 ipse efficeretur christianus C      14 urbe secunda ER  
 15 quotidie et tota nocte ER      16 quoddam castrum C      17  
 Zebari BER      18 magnam sitim C      19 die ac nocte  
 B      20 erat via C      21 ibique C      nostros C:  
 nobis insidiantes CER      26 om. urbem C      dicitur ER: nomine  
 om. quae C      27 vocatur ER      28 autem venimus C: om. vero  
 ER      31 Deinde Ha: Inde Tud      ab urbem R      35 om.  
 martyrium C      Ibi ER      36 om. illic C      37  
 et reget CER      38 necnon et C



equis ac animalibus aliis, quo deuote et honeste viueret  
40 cum illis qui cum eo essent.

1099 **XXXVII.** Remansit ipse illic cum gaudio; nos  
autem laetantes et exultantes, vsque ad ciuitatem  
Hierusalem peruenimus, feria tertia, octauo Idus Iunii,  
eamque mirabiliter obsedimus. Robertus namque Nor-  
5 mannus eam obsedit a septentrione, iuxta S. Stephani  
protomartyris ecclesiam, vbi gaudenter lapidatus est  
pro nomine Christi; iuxta eum Rotbertus, Flandrensis  
comes. Ab occidente vero obsedit eam dux Gode-  
fridus et Tancredus. A meridie obsedit eam comes S.  
10 Aegidii, scilicet in monte Sion, circa ecclesiam S. Mariae  
Matris Domini, vbi Dominus cum suis caenauit discipulis.  
Tertia vero die, ex nostris, scilicet Raimundus Piletus et  
Raimundus de Taurina et alii plures causa praeliandi  
inuenerunt bis centum Arabes, et praeliati sunt Christi  
15 milites contra illos incredulos, et Deo adiuuante,  
fortiter illos superauerunt, et occiderunt multos ex eis, et  
apprehenderunt triginta equos. Secunda vero veniente  
feria, aggredimur fortissime ciuitatem tam mirabiliter, vt  
si scalae fuissent paratae, in nostra fuisset ciuitas manu.  
20 Tamen minorem strauimus murum, et vnam scalam  
ereximus ad maiorem murum, super quam ascendebant  
nostri milites et cominus percutiebant Sarracenos suis  
ensibus et lanceis, et defensores ciuitatis; fueruntque

39 et aliis animalibus C 40 cum hiis C secum C  
**XXXVII.** 1 ibi cum gaudio C 1-2 gaudio. Capitulum  
XXXVII. Nos autem Ha 2 om. ciuitatem C 4-5 piissimus  
electusque miles (om. miles ER): Robertus, vir nobilissimus,  
Normannie (Nortmannorum ER): Comes, cum suo praeclaro  
exercitu obsedit eam CER 5 beatissimi C 6 om.  
protomartyris C om. gaudenter CER 7 om. eum B: quem  
CER 8 om. comes ER add. illam obsedi C: obsedit eam  
ER 12 om. ex nostris, scilicet C 13 plures ex nostris CER  
14 sequestraverunt se ab exercitu inveneruntque CER CCTos  
C illos Arabes C 15 iuvante CER 16 superati  
sunt eos occideruntque C 17 apprehendere C 21  
super quam CER



mortui multi ex nostris, sed plures ex illis. In illa autem  
 obsidione panes ad emendum inuenire non poteramus, 25  
 fere per spatium dierum decem, donec venit nuntius  
 nostrarum nauium; et in nimia pressura sitis detenti  
 fuimus, ita vt per nimium terrorem et pauorem per sex  
 millia nostros potaremus equos et alia animalia. Syloa  
 namque fons, qui est ad radicem montis Syon, sustinebat 30  
 nos, sed tamen cara vendebatur aqua inter nos. Post-  
 quam enim venit nuntius nostrarum nauium, acceperunt  
 inter se nostri seniores consilium, quemadmodum mitte-  
 rent milites qui fideliter custodirent homines et naues  
 in portu Iaphiae. Summo autem diluculo, exierunt 35  
 centum milites de exercitu Raimundi, comitis S. Aegidii,  
 Raimundus Piletus, et Achardus de Mommellou, et  
 Wilhelmus de Sabra, et ibant cum fiducia ad portum.  
 Diuiserunt denique se triginta milites ex nostris ab  
 aliis, et inuenerunt septingentos Arabes et Turcos et 40  
 Sarracenos, de exercitu ammirauisi, quos inuaserunt  
 fortiter Christi milites; sed tam magna fuit virtus  
 illorum super nostros, vt vndique circumcingerent illos,  
 et occiderunt Achardum de Mommellou, et pauperes  
 homines pedites. Cum autem tenerent nostros iam 45  
 inclusos, qui omnes putabant mori, venit alius quidam  
 nuntius, dicens Raimundo Pileto: 'Quid hic astas cum  
 his militibus? Ecce omnes nostri in nimia districtione  
 Arabum et Turcorum et Sarracenorum sunt, et forsitan  
 in hac hora omnes mortui sunt: succurrite ergo illis, 50  
 succurrite.' Audientes nostri haec, statim cucurrerunt  
 celeri cursu et festinanter peruenerunt vsque ad illos  
 preliando. Paganorum vero gens, videns Christi milites,

28 ita quod C      29 om. nostros B      30 sustentabat C  
 31-32 Postquam autem C      37 scilicet Raimundus C      38  
 et alii et ibant C      39-40 ex illis C      44 occideruntque C  
 46 aliis B: nuntius quidam (om. alius) C      47 stas CER      48  
 magna ER districtione sunt C      49 Saracenorum, et C  
 53 om. preliando C      Pagani vero (om. gens) videntes C



diuisit se et fecerunt duo agmina. Nostri autem,  
 55 inuocato Christi nomine, tam acriter inuaserunt illos  
 incredulos, vt quisque miles prosterneret suum. Videntes  
 vero illi quod non possent stare ante Francorum  
 fortitudinem, timore nimio perterriti, verterunt scapulas  
 retro, quos nostri persequentes fere per spacia quatuor  
 60 milium, occiderunt multos ex eis, vnumque retinuerunt  
 viuum, qui noua eis per ordinem diceret; retinuerunt  
 quoque centum et tres equos. In eadem obsidione tanta  
 oppressione sitis fuimus grauati, vt sueremus coria  
 boum et bufalorum in quibus deferebamus aquas fere per  
 65 spacium sex miliariorum; ex illis quippe vasculis foetida  
 utebamus aqua, et quantum ex olida aqua et hordaceo  
 pane in nimia districtione et afflictione eramus cotidie.  
 Sarraceni namque in cunctis fontibus et aquis latentes  
 insidiabantur nostris, eosque vbique occidebant et  
 70 dilaniabant: animalia quoque secum in suas cauernas  
 et speluncas deducebant.

1099 **XXXVIII.** Tunc seniores nostri ordinauerunt quo-  
 modo possent ingeniare ciuitatem, vt ad adorandum  
 nostri Saluatoris intrarent Sepulcrum. Feceruntque duo  
 lignea castra, et alia plura machinamenta. Dux Gode-  
 5 fridus suum fecit castrum cum machinis, et Raimundus  
 comes similiter, quibus de longinquis terris attrahebant  
 ligna. Sarraceni igitur, videntes nostros facientes has  
 machinas, mirabiliter muniebant ciuitatem et turre

54 diuiserunt se C 55 tum acriter G (*Bongars*): tam  
 acriter *Ha R*: tam fortiter *Tud* 56 *om.* incredulos C unus-  
 quisque *ER* 56-57 Videntes igitur C: autem *ER* 59-60  
 miliariorum spatia C 60 eis omnia C 61 retinue-  
 rent etiam C 64 aquam C 65 se (*sic*) miliariorum  
 spacium ex talibus autem vasculis C 69 nostri eosque C  
 70-71 speluncas et cavernas C

**XXXVIII.** 2 *om.* ad C 5 *om.* Raimundus C 6 comes  
*add.* S. Egidii C ad quorum opus C attrahebantur C  
 7 Porro Saraceni videntes C has facere C 8 munire  
 ceperunt C



nocte accrescebant. Videntes autem nostri seniores ex  
qua parte ciuitas esset magis languida, illuc in quadam 10  
nocte Sabbathi deportauerunt nostram machinam et  
ligneum castrum in orientalem partem. Summo autem  
diluculo erexerunt ea et aptauerunt et ornauerunt  
castrum in prima et secunda et tertia feria. Comes  
namque S. Aegidii a meridiana plaga reficiebat suam 15  
machinam. Interea in tanta pressura sitis fuimus  
districti, vt vnus homo pro vno denario non posset ad  
sufficientiam habere aquam aut extinguere sitim suam.  
Nocte vero ac die, in quarta et quinta feria, mirabiliter  
aggredimur ciuitatem ex omni parte. Sed antequam 20  
inuaderemus eam, ordinauerunt episcopi et sacerdotes  
praedicando et commonendo omnes, vt processionem Deo  
in circuitu Hierusalem celebrarent, et orationes atque  
eleemosynas et ieiunia fideliter facerent. Sexta vero  
feria, summo mane, vndique aggredimur urbem, et nihil 25  
ei nocere potuimus, eramusque omnes stupefacti ac in  
nimio pauore. Appropinquante autem hora scilicet in  
qua Dominus noster Iesus Christus dignatus est pro  
nobis sufferre patibulum crucis, nostri milites fortiter  
pugnabant in castello, videlicet dux Godefridus, et 30  
comes Eustachius, frater eius. Tunc ascendit quidam  
miles ex nostris, Letholdus nomine, super murum vrbs.  
Mox vero vt ascendit, omnes defensores ciuitatis fugerunt  
per muros et per ciuitatem, nostrique subsecuti perseque-  
bantur eos occidendo et detruncando vsque ad templum 35  
Salomonis; ibique talis occisio fuit, vt nostri in sanguine  
illorum pedes vsque ad cauillas mitterent. At Raimun-  
dus comes a meridie conduxit suum exercitum et

10 illic C      14 dominica et secunda feria ac tertia C      14-15  
Comes etiam C      17 om. districti C      19 ac quinta C  
20 urbem C      om. ex omni parte C      22 admonendo ER      23  
orationes et C      24 ac ieiunia C      25 sed nichil C  
26 stupefacti et C      27 pavore constituti C      33 Mox  
autem C      34-35 persecuti sunt C



castellum vsque prope murum ; sed inter castellum et  
 40 murum erat quaedam fouea nimis profunda. Tunc consi-  
 liati sunt nostri vt implerent foueam, feceruntque praeco-  
 nari vt si aliquis illam foueam portasset tres petras,  
 vnum haberet denarium. Perdurauit vero haec impletio  
 per tres dies et noctes. Tandem plena fouea, conduxerunt  
 45 castellum iuxta murum. Illi autem qui intus erant  
 mirabiliter praeliabantur cum nostris, igne et lapidibus.  
 Audiens itaque comes quod Franci essent in vrbe, suis  
 dixit hominibus : ' Quid tardatis ? Ecce omnes Franci-  
 genae iam sunt in vrbe.' Ammiralius itaque, qui erat  
 50 in Turri Daud, reddidit se comiti, eique aperuit portam,  
 vbi peregrini persolvere solebant tributa. Intrantes  
 autem nostri ciuitatem peregrini persequiebantur et  
 occidebant Sarracenos vsque ad Templum Salomonis,  
 in quo congregati, dederunt nostris maximum bellum per  
 55 totum diem, ita vt sanguis illorum per totum templum  
 flueret. Tandem superatis paganis, apprehenderunt  
 nostri masculos et foeminas sat in templo, et occiderunt  
 quos voluerunt, et quos voluerunt retinuerunt viuos.  
 Super templum vero Salomonis erat maxima paganorum  
 60 congregatio vtriusque sexus, quibus Tancredus et Gaston  
 de Beert dederunt sua vexilla. Mox cucurrerunt per  
 vniuersam urbem, capientes aurum et argentum, equos  
 et mulas, domosque plenas omnibus bonis. Venerunt  
 autem omnes nostri gaudentes et prae nimio gaudio plo-  
 65 rantes ad nostri Saluatoris Iesu Sepulcrum adorandum,

39 ad castellum *ER* 40-41 *om.* nimis . . . foueam  
*E* 42 quia si *C* quis *CE* in eandem *C* tres portas  
 deportaret *E* : tres deportaret petras *C* 43 *om.* vero *CER*  
 44 impleta fouea *C* 45 usque ad murum *C* : prope *ER* Porro  
 illi *C* : *om.* autem *C* 47 civitate *ER* 49 Admiralius  
*CER* autem *C* 50 et aperuit ibi *C* 51 persolvebant *ER*  
 51-52 Intrantes itaque nostri civitatem *C* : autem civitatem  
 nostri *Ha om.* peregrini *BC* 55-56 occisorum flueret  
 per totum templum *C* 58 *om.* vivos *B* 59 *om.* vero *ER*  
 61 Bert *C* Moxque *C* cucurrerunt omnes nostri per *C*  
 63 mulos *HaTud* 63-64 Deinde venerunt *C om.* autem  
 omnes nostri *C : om omnes BER*



et reddiderunt ei capitale debitum. Mane autem facto ascenderunt nostri caute supra tectum templi et inuaserunt Sarracenos masculos et foeminas, decollantes eos nudis ensibus ; alii vero dabant se praecipites in templo. Hoc videns Tancredus iratus est nimis.

7

**XXXIX.** Tunc nostri tenuerunt consilium, vt vnus- quisque faceret eleemosynas cum orationibus, qua- tinus sibi Deus eligeret quem vellet regnare super alios et regere ciuitatem. Iusserunt quoque Sarracenos mortuos omnes eiici foras prae nimio foetore, quia omnis vrbs plena erat illorum cadaueribus, et viui Sarra- ceni trahebant mortuos ante portarum exitus, et ordina- bant montes ex eis quasi essent domos. Tales occisiones de Paganorum gente nullus vnquam audiuit nec vidit, quoniam pyrae erant ordinatae ex eis sicut metae, et nemo scit numerum eorum, nisi solus Deus. Fecit vero comes Raimundus conduci ammiralium et alios qui cum eo erant vsque Scalonam, sanos et illaesos. Octauo autem die quo ciuitas fuit capta, elegerunt ducem Gode- fridum principem ciuitatis, qui debellaret paganos, et custodiret Christianos. Similiter elegerunt patri- archam quendam sapientissimum et honorabilem virum nomine Arnulfum, in die S. Petri ad Vincula. Haec ciuitas fuit capta a Christianis Dei, decimo quinto die Iulii, in sexta feria. Interea nuntius venit Tancredo

1099

GODE-  
FRIDVS,  
Rex  
Electus

5

10

15

20

66 tributum CER 67 ascenderunt caute C 69 e templo  
HaRTud 70 Quod videns C

**XXXIX.** 1 Hiis itaque gestis tenuerunt seniores consilium C  
3-4 om. super . . . civitatem E 6 fere plena BCER om. et C  
6-7 Saraceni igitur vivi C 7-8 faciebant CER 8 inde aggeres C  
om. ex eis CER 8 Tantas cedes C 10 essent C 11 quorum  
numerum nemo scit C 12 Comes autem Raimundus fecit con-  
duci C 13 usque ad C Ascalonam ER 13-14 Octavo deni-  
que C 14 postquam civitas C 17 om. quendam BCE  
18 Arnulphum C 19-20 a christianis et servis dei capta . . .  
mensis iulii C 20 feria anno ab incarnatione domini  
m<sup>o</sup>xcix<sup>mo</sup> indictione vii<sup>a</sup> Pontifice sedem apostolicam papa  
Urbano Secundo C De Interea usque ad finem codicis adiunctae  
sunt lectiones sub lit. M legatus C ad Tancredum C



et comiti Eustachio, vt praepararent se et pergerent  
ad recipiendam Neopolitanam urbem. Exierunt illi et  
duxerunt secum multos milites et pedones et peruenerunt  
ad urbem : habitatores vero illius reddiderunt se illico.  
25 Denuo mandauit illis dux, vt cito venirent ad bellum  
quod nobis ammirauisus Babyloniae praeparat vrbi  
Scaloniae. Illi autem festinando intrauerunt montaneam,  
quaerentes Sarracenorum bella, et venerunt Cesaream.  
Itaque venientes illi iuxta mare ad urbem Ramore,  
30 illic inuenerunt multos Arabes, qui praecursores erant  
belli. Quos nostri persequentes, apprehenderunt plures  
ex eis, qui dixerunt omnia belli noua, vbi essent et quot  
essent aut vbi bellare disponderent contra Christianos.  
Quod audiens Tancredus, statim misit nuntium Hieru-  
35 salem duci Godefrido et patriarchae omnibusque  
principibus, dicens : 'Sciatis quod nobis paratum est  
bellum Scaloniae ; venite ergo festinanter cum omni  
virtute quam habere poteritis.' Tunc iussit dux sub-  
moneri omnes, vt fideliter irent praeparati Scalonom  
40 obuiam inimicis nostris. Ipse vero cum patriarcha et  
Rotberto Flandrensi comite exiuit de vrbe in feria  
tertia, et Marturanensis episcopus cum eis. Comes vero  
S. Aegidii ac Rotbertus Normannus dixerunt se non

21 ad comitem Eustachium dicens eis ut properanter pergerent  
C 22 recipiendum C urbem neapolim M Exierunt  
igitur C 23 ducentes secus C om. multos ER pedites  
C 25 Dux autem mandauit illis ut C: dux Godefridus  
qui et rex Iherusalem M 26 om. nobis HaR praeparabat  
illis apud C om. urbi CM 27 Quo audito om. Illi autem C  
festinanter C 29 venientes iuxta CM 31 Quos persequentes  
C 32 dixerunt eis C 33 disposuissent C 34 Quo  
cognito C om. nuntium E: legatum C 36 Sciatis, pro  
certo quia C 36-37 paratur bellum apud Ascalonam C  
37 venite igitur om. festinanter C 38-39 submoveri  
ER Summonere C commoneri M 39 pergeremus  
parati C 41 om. Rotberto C 41-42 in III<sup>a</sup> feria C 42  
Comes autem C 43 et C Robertus Normannorum princeps  
CER: Normannus princeps B



exituros, nisi certum bellum scirent. Iusserunt ergo militibus suis vt pergerent videre, si bellum vere esset, 45 et reuerterentur quantocius, quia ipsi mox essent parati ire. Ierunt illi, videruntque bellum, et cito renuntiauerunt se vidisse oculis suis. Continuo dux, apprehenso Marturanensi episcopo, mandauit Hierusalem, quo milites qui ibi erant praeparent se, et veniant ad bellum. 50 Quarta vero feria, illi principes exierunt et militauerunt ad bellum. Episcopus vero Marturanensis rediit reportans verba missa patriarchae et duci, exieruntque Sarraceni et obuiauere ei, et apprehensum secum duxerunt. Petrus vero heremita remansit Hierusalem 55 ordinando et praecipiendo Graecis et Latinis atque clericis, vt fideliter Deo processionem celebrent, et orationes eleemosinasque faciant, vt Deus populo suo victoriam daret. Clerici namque et presbyteri, induti sacris vestibus, ad templum Domini conduxere pro- 60 cessionem, missas et orationes decantantes, vt suum defenderet populum. Denique patriarcha et episcopi alii-que seniores congregati sunt ad flumen, quod est ex hac parte Scalonae. Illic multa animalia bouum, camelorum, ouium atque omnium bonorum depraedati sunt. 65 Venerunt autem Arabes fere trecenti, irrueruntque nostri

45 viderent C 46-47 parati venire CERM 47  
 Ierunt ergo C et viderunt Ha: viderunt (videruntque C)  
 hostes CER bellum paratum M 48 se illos E Denique  
 dux C assumpto C 50 ibi erat C om. se C venient C  
 51-52 om. Quarta . . . bellum CEM 52 Episcopus igitur C  
 52-55 Marturanensis veniebat ferens ducis (ducens[sic]) mandata  
 militibus qui erant Ierosolimis. Cui obviam fuerunt sarraceni  
 et apprehenderunt illum duxeruntque secum. Quarta autem feria  
 exierunt supradicti principes et equitaverunt ad bellum. Porro  
 Petrus heremita C 53-54 exierunt Saraceni ER 55-6 in  
 ierusalem ordinans et precipiens Grecis C 57 fiducialiter ER  
 celebrarent processionem et ut C: celebrarent HaR 58  
 facerent HaR quatinus Deus C 59 om. namque BERM:  
 igitur C 60-61 conduxerunt processionem ad templum  
 domini missas decantantes et orationes facientes ut deus suum  
 C 62-3 ceterique C clerici et seniores ER 64 Ubi  
 etiam C: illicque M 66 om. Arabes E



super illos et apprehenderunt duos ex eis, persequentes  
 alios vsque ad eorum exercitum. Sero autem facto,  
 patriarcha fecit praeconari per omnem hostem, vt in  
 70 summo mane cras essent omnes parati ad bellum, ex-  
 communicans, ne vllus homo intenderet ad vlla spolia, do-  
 nec bellum esset factum ; sed eo facto, reuerterentur cum  
 felici gaudio ad accipiendum quicquid eis praedestinatum  
 esset a Domino. Summo vero diluculo, in sexta feria,  
 75 intrauerunt in vallem nimis pulchra, secus littus maris, in  
 qua suas ordinauerunt acies. Dux instruxit suam aciem,  
 et comes Nortmanniae suam, comes S. Aegidii suam,  
 comes Flandrensis suam, comes Eustachius suam, Tan-  
 credus et Gaston suam ; ordinauerunt quoque pedites  
 80 et sagittarios qui praecederent milites, et sic ordina-  
 uerunt omnia ; statimque coeperunt militare in nomine  
 domini nostri Iesu Christi. In sinistra vero parte fuit  
 dux Godefridus cum sua acie ; comesque S. Aegidii equi-  
 tauit iuxta mare in dextera parte ; comes Normanniae  
 85 et comes Flandrensis et Tancredus omnesque alii equita-  
 bant in medio. Tunc nostri coeperunt paulatim ambulare.  
 Pagani vero stabant parati ad bellum. Vnusquisque  
 suum habebat vasculum pendens collo, ex quibus pota-  
 rent persequentes nos ; sed illis non licuit, gratia Dei.  
 90 Comes autem de Normannia, cernens ammirauissi

68 exercitum illorum C 69 universam hostem C 70  
 crastino summo C om. cras C 71 si ullus C intentus esset  
 ad aliqua C 72 esset pactum C 73 ad capiendum HaR  
 74 Summo autem ER sexta scilicet C 75 vallem quam-  
 dam C 76 ibique struxerunt acias C: struxerunt ER  
 76-77 om. aciem, et CER 77 preclarus comes Normannorum  
 (Nortmannorum R Robertus C) CER 79 ordinauerunt  
 quippe ER 80-81 ordinatis omnibus equitare ceperunt C  
 militari ceperunt ER: proeliari coeperunt M 82 Domini Iesu  
 HaR (om. nostri) om. vero CM 83 sua gente C comes  
 vero C 84 dextra Ha: sinistra ER fuit mitissimus Comes  
 C: mitissimus comes Robertus comes ER 85 comesque ER  
 Tancredus vero et omnes C 86 nostri sic CER 87 Porro  
 pagani C 88 om. suum E de collo C 89 gratia Dei illis C 90  
 Incomparabilis itaque miles scilicet domnus (dominus C) Rot-  
 bertus comes Nortmanniae (Robertus Comes Normannie C) CER



stantarum habere quoddam pomum aureum in sum-  
 mitate hastae, quae erat cooperta argento, ruit vehe-  
 menter super illum, eumque vulneravit vsque ad mortem.  
 Ex alia parte, comes Flandrensis nimis acriter illos inuasit.  
 Tancredus igitur impetum fecit per medium tentorium <sup>95</sup>  
 eorum, quod videntes pagani continuo inierunt fugam.  
 Paganorum multitudo erat innumerabilis, numerumque  
 eorum nemo scit, nisi solus Deus. Bella vero erant im-  
 mensa ; sed virtus diuina comitabatur nobiscum tam  
 magna, tam fortis, quod statim superauius illos. <sup>100</sup>  
 Stabant autem inimici Dei excaecati et stupefacti,  
 ac videntes Christi milites apertis oculis nil videbant et  
 contra Christianos erigere se non audebant, virtute Dei  
 tremefacti ; pro nimio timore ascendebant in arbores, in  
 quibus putabant se abscondere ; at nostri sagittando et <sup>105</sup>  
 cum lanceis et ensibus occidendo, eos ad terram praecipi-  
 tabant ; alii autem iactabant se in terram, non audentes  
 se erigere contra nos. Nostri igitur illos detruncabant,  
 sicut aliquis detruncat animalia ad macellum. Comes  
 S. Aegidii iuxta mare ex eis occidit sine numero ; alii <sup>110</sup>  
 vero se praecipitabant in mare, alii fugiebant huc illucque.  
 Veniens itaque ammirauissus ante ciuitatem, dolens et  
 moerens, lacrymando dixit : ‘ O Deorum spiritus, quis  
 vnquam vidit vel audiuit talia ? Tanta potestas, tanta  
 virtus, tanta militia quae nunquam ab vlla gente fuit <sup>115</sup>

<sup>91</sup> standarum habentem *CEMR*      <sup>92</sup> que et ipsa *C*      <sup>92-93</sup>  
 argento cooperta vehementi impetu irruit *C*      <sup>93</sup> qui hunc  
 ferebat quem et prosternens cum eodem standaro letaliter vul-  
 neravit *C* : qui hunc ferebat, quem viriliter prosternens vul-  
 neravit *ER*      <sup>95</sup> Tancredus vero *CER*      <sup>95-96</sup> per media  
 illorum tentoria *C* : per medium tentorium eorum *HaR* : ten-  
 toriorum (*sic*) *G* (*Bongars*)      <sup>97</sup> Quorum multitudo *CER*  
<sup>97-98</sup> Nullus enim scit eorum numerum nisi *C*      <sup>98</sup> Bella  
 quidem *C*      <sup>101</sup> Stabant denique *C* : vero *M*      inimici  
 nostri *C*      *om.* Dei *B*      <sup>102</sup> et videntes *C*      <sup>103</sup> virtute  
 divina *C*      <sup>104</sup> Prae nimio *HaR* : pro *M*      <sup>105</sup> putantes ibi  
 se posse latere *C*      Sed *CER*      <sup>107</sup> precipitabant illos  
 ad terram : alii vero sponte se precipites dabant ad terram *C*  
<sup>112</sup> admiralius *CER*      Ascalonam *CER*      <sup>113</sup> O Deus *ER*  
<sup>115</sup> numquam potuit *C*



superata, modo a tantilla gente Christianorum, quod in  
 pugillo potest claudi, est deuicta ! Heu mihi tristis ac  
 dolens ! Quid amplius dicam ? Superatus sum a gente  
 mendica, inermi et pauperrima, quae non habet nisi sac-  
 120 cum et peram. Ipsa modo persequitur gentem Aegyptia-  
 cam, quae illi plerunque suas largita est elemosynas, dum  
 olim per omnem nostram patriam mendicarent. Huc  
 conduxī ad conuentionem ducenta millia militum, et  
 video ipsos laxis frenis fugientes per viam Babylonicam,  
 125 et non audent reuerti aduersus gentem Francigenam.  
 Iuro per Machumet, et per omnia Deorum numina, quod  
 vltorius non retinebo milites conuentione aliqua, quia  
 expulsus sum a gente aduena. Conduxī omnia armorum  
 genera et omnia instrumenta siue machinamenta vt eos  
 130 obsiderem in Hierusalem, et ipsi praeuenerunt me ad  
 bellum, itinere dierum duorum. Vech ! Quid mihi esset,  
 si illuc gentem conduxissem meam ? Heu mihi ! Quid  
 amplius dicam ? Inhonoratus ero semper in terra  
 Babylonica.' Nostri autem acceperunt eius stantarum,  
 135 quod comparauit comes de Normania viginti marchas  
 argenti, et dedit patriarchae in Dei honorem, Sanctique  
 Sepulchri ; ensem vero emit quidam sexaginta bisanteis.  
 Superati sunt denique inimici nostri, Deo annuente.  
 Omnes naues terrarum paganorum ibi aderant ; homines

116 superari C om. gente C 116-117 om. quod . . .  
 claudi BCERM 122 om. nostram E mendicaret C  
 122-123 Hanc conduxī C 124 video illos CERM 126  
 Machometh C : Mahomet R 127-128 quoniam expulsus  
 C 128 aliena et advena CERM 129 om. omnia E  
 om. instrumenta siue BCERM 131-132 om. Vech . . . meam  
 BCERM 132 si illius Ha 134-136 Nostri itaque Standa-  
 rum eiusdem amiralii acceperunt quem inclitus et ab omnibus  
 honorandus miles Robertus Normannorum Comes nobilissimus  
 perempto huius signifero prostaverat, quem ipse redemit xx  
 marcis argenti deditque patriarche C : itaque admiralii eiusdem  
 acceperunt standarum quod honorandus miles Rotbertus Nort-  
 mannorum nobilissimus perempto huius signifero prostaverat,  
 illud redimens x marchas argenti ER 136 argenti dedit ER  
 et Sancti Ha : Sancti que ER 138 sunt itaque HaR 139  
 om. naves C om. paganorum E



vero qui intus erant, videntes ammirauissimum fugientem <sup>140</sup>  
 cum suo exercitu, statim suspenderunt vela et impulerunt  
 se in alta maria. Reuersi sunt nostri ad tentoria eorum,  
 acceperuntque innumera spolia auri et argenti, omnium-  
 que bonorum cumula : equos et mulos, asinos et camelos,  
 innumerabiles oues et boues, et instrumenta. Omnes <sup>145</sup>  
 namque montes et colles et omnia plana stabant co-  
 operta de multitudine illorum animalium, et inuenerunt  
 armorum cumula ; quae voluerunt, deportauerunt,  
 reliqua igne consumpserunt. Reuersi sunt nostri cum  
 gaudio Hierusalem, deferentes secum omnia bona, <sup>150</sup>  
 scilicet camelos et asinos onustos pane, biscocto et  
 farina et frumento et caseo et pane et oleo et omnibus  
 bonis quae illis necesse erant. Hoc bellum factum est  
 pridie Idus Aug. largiente hoc Domino nostro Iesu  
 Christo : cui est honor et gloria, nunc et semper, et <sup>155</sup>  
 in secula seculorum. Dicat omnis spiritus Amen.

<sup>140</sup> admiralium *CER*    <sup>141</sup> *om. statim E*    <sup>142</sup> Reversique *C*  
 illorum tentoria *ER*    <sup>143</sup> auri, argenti *Ha*    <sup>143-145</sup>  
 ac omnium animalium genera omniumque armorum instrumenta  
*CER* : omniumque animalium genera ac omnium armorum  
 instrumenta *B* : *om. cumula . . . boves BCER*    <sup>145-148</sup> *om.*  
 Omnes . . . armorum cumula *BCERM*    <sup>148</sup> asportauerunt  
*BCERM*    <sup>149</sup> combusserunt *C*    Redieruntque *CE om.*  
 nostri *C*    <sup>151-153</sup> *om. scilicet . . . bonis BCERM*    <sup>153</sup> ne-  
 cessaria erant *BCER*    actum est *BCERM*    <sup>154</sup> *om. hoc*  
*CERM* : hec *B*    <sup>155</sup> semper per infinita seculorum secula *C*  
<sup>155-156</sup> Christo fidelibus suis victoriam qui cum Patre et Spiritu  
 Sancto vivit et regnat Deus per infinita saecula saeculorum,  
 Amen. *M* : per infinita seculorum secula *ER*



# NOTES

## PREFATORY

BONGARS divides his text into four books and thirty-nine chapters. The editors of the *Recueil des historiens des croisades* keep the four books, but subdivide them into fifty-five chapters. Hagenmeyer omits the division into books, but retains the thirty-nine chapters, and adds chapter-headings and numbered sub-sections. The references in the following notes are to chapters and page lines.

The subject-matter of the notes may be supplemented from the general books of reference : Ordericus Vitalis, *Hist. Eccles.* ed. Le Prévost (annotated), 1838-55 ; *La Chanson d'Antioche*, ed. P. Paris, ii (*Table des Noms*), 1848 ; von Sybel, *Gesch. des ersten Kreuzzuges*, 2nd. ed., 1881 ; H. Hagenmeyer, *Ekkehardi Uraugiensis Hierosolymita*, 1877 (annotated), *Peter der Eremit*, 1879, *Anonymi Gesta Francorum*, 1890 (annotated). R. Röhricht, *Gesch. des ersten Kreuzzuges*, 1901 (annotated). Cf. Bibliography, p. 145.

## CHAPTER I. Page 1

3-5. *quis vult . . . sequatur me* : Matt. xvi. 24 (Vulgate). Cf. Mark viii. 34 ; Luke ix. 23.

5. *motio valida* : *Anglo-Saxon Chron.*, ann. 1096 (*Laud*) : *Dises geares . . . wearð swiðe mycel styrung geond ealle þas þeode.*

6. *Galliarum regiones* : *Gallia cisalpina* and *Gallia transalpina*. For the Norman of southern Italy, France was 'beyond the Alps'. The Norman of Normandy, Ordericus Vitalis, calls the inhabitants of France *Cisalpini*.

9. *Apostolicus* : the Pope. *L'apostole de Rome* (*Chans. d'Antioche* : Chant I, xxxviii-xxxix).

10. *Vrbanus* : Urban II, Otto of Lagny, a Frenchman from Châtillon-sur-Marne. Archdeacon of Rheims, monk and prior of Cluny, Cardinal-bishop of Ostia, 1078. Pope, 1088-99.

12-13. *coepitque . . . sermocinari et praedicare* : Council of Clermont, November 18-28, 1095. The Pope spoke at Limoges and Angers early in 1096 and held synods at Tours, in March 1096, and at Nîmes, in July 1096. The famous Clermont address is recorded by Fulcher of Chartres, Robert the Monk, Guibert of Nogent, and Baudri of Dol, all of whom were present at the Council. Cf. W. of Malmesbury, *Gesta Regum*, Lib. IV, R.S. ii. p. 391 seq.



- 17-24. *Frates . . . retributio* : Acts ix. 16, xiv. 21 (Vulgate) ;  
 2 Cor. xi. 23-28 ; 2 Tim. i. 8 ; Luke ix. 26, xxi. 15 ; Matt. v. 12.  
 27-8. *Christi . . . sequi vestigia* : 1 Peter ii. 21.  
 28-9. *de manu . . . tartarea* : cf. Psalm xlviii. 16 (Vulgate).

## CHAPTER II. Page 2

1. *Galli e suis remoti sunt* : all the MSS. read *Galliae* (*Gallie*) *suis remotae* (*remote*) *sunt*. The form *Galli e* only occurs in Bongars and in Tudebod. The *Recueil* editors follow Bongars, but Hagenmeyer adopts the reading *Galliae* (*Gallie*), because it is found in all the MSS., in particular in *B*, which he regards as nearest to the original, while the awkward construction suggests an early origin. For the retention of *Galli e* despite the consensus of MS. readings in favour of *Gallie* it may be argued that Bongars is in agreement with the early plagiarist Tudebod, and that it would be as easy for copyists to turn *Galli e* into *Gallie* and thus avoid the clumsy repetition of *Galli* in two consecutive sentences (*Iamiamque Galli . . . Fecerunt denique Galli*) as for Tudebod and Bongars to reverse the process. In a subsequent discussion of the date of Peter the Hermit's arrival at Constantinople (note : c. ii. 9) Hagenmeyer rejects the reading of all the MSS., including *B*, and follows Bongars and Tudebod. It would seem more logical for these two passages to stand or fall together, as they rest on much the same authority. Hence, in the present edition, the text of Bongars has been retained in both cases.

3. *Hungariae . . . regionem* : King Coloman succeeded his father, Ladislaus I, the Saint, in 1095.

3-4. *Petrus heremita* [*Eremita*] : Peter the Hermit, called by Anna Comnena Κουκούπετρος, 'Cowled Peter', *Petrus Cucullatus*, or 'Peterkin', from a Picard word, *keukiot*, little (Ducange, *Notae ad Annae Alex.*). Born in or near Amiens in Picardy, Peter became a monk, an ascetic, and a leader and preacher of the 'People's Crusade' of 1096, though his claims to be 'the first author' (*primus auctor*, Alb. of Aix, Lib. i, c. ii) of the great expedition must be regarded as legendary. They rest mainly on such comparatively late, romantic, and literary authorities as the *Historia belli sacri*, Albert of Aix, William of Tyre, and *La Chanson d'Antioche*.

4. *dux Godefridus* : Godfrey of Bouillon, or of Boulogne, Duke of Lower Lorraine. He was called Godfrey of Bouillon from his castle and County of Bouillon in the Ardennes, near the French frontier of the duchy of Lower Lorraine. Godfrey was the son of Eustace II, Count of Boulogne (B. sur mer). By his second wife, Ida, sister of Godfrey the Hunchback, Duke of Lower Lorraine, Eustace II had three sons. Eustace III, Count of Boulogne (notes, c. xxxviii), Godfrey, 'Advocate of



the Holy Sepulchre', and Baldwin, who succeeded him on the throne of Jerusalem. Godfrey was the adopted heir of his uncle Godfrey the Hunchback. In 1076 he succeeded to the family lands, including Bouillon, and to the March of Antwerp. In 1089, after he had fought on the Imperialist side in the War of Investiture, the Emperor Henry IV granted him the duchy of Lower Lorraine. When in 1096 he started for the Holy Land, he pledged his castle of Bouillon to the Bishop of Liège and sold some of his hereditary estates. His legend connects with Lohengrin and the 'Swan Knight'. He is one of the 'Nine Worthies of Christendom'. G. Richter, *Annalen der deutsch. Gesch. im Mittelalter*, Abtheilung III, Band II, 1898, *sub ann.* 1076, 1089, 1095, 1096; E. Heyck, *Die Kreuzzüge und das heilige Land*, 1900, p. 25 seq.; *Enc. Brit.*, ed. 1911, *Godfrey*; C. Hippeau, *Le Chevalier au Cygne*, 1874-7; Pignonneau, *Le Cycle de la Croisade et de la famille de Bouillon*, 1877. Cf. Michaud, *Bibl. des Croisades*, i, 1829.

*Balduinus frater eius*: Baldwin I, King of Jerusalem, 1100-18, son of Eustace II, Count of Boulogne, and of his second wife Ida. He married the daughter of Ralph of Toény, lord of Conches. She accompanied him on the Crusade, but died near Marash in 1097. Baldwin then married an Armenian, niece of the Armenian prince Constantine. His third wife was Adelaide of Sicily, daughter of Robert Guiscard's brother, the Great Count, Roger I (notes, c. x. 59-60, c. xi. 61). Cf. A. E. Freeman, *Norm. Conq.*, iv-v; *W. Rufus*, i.

5. *Balduinus comes de Monte*: Baldwin II, Count of Hainault, 'de monte Henno'. He was killed or carried off by the Turks in 1098.

6. *quos ignoro*: the Anonymous only knows about Godfrey's troops from hearsay. Cf. c. iv, where he shows intimate knowledge of the army of Bohemund, his own leader and *dominus*.

6-8. *viam, quam . . . Carolus Magnus . . . aptari fecit*: the 'road of Charles the Great' was the trade-route and pilgrim's way from Constantinople to Germany, which connected the Elbe with the Middle Danube, and branched off to the Black Sea and to the Adriatic. It was begun by Tiberius, continued by Trajan, and completed by Constantine the Great. Charles the Great had relations with both the Patriarch of Jerusalem and the Caliph of Baghdad Hārūn ar-Rashīd, though the legend of the pilgrimage of Charlemagne and his twelve peers to the Holy Places seems to have come into being after the First Crusade. Robert the Monk makes Urban II at Clermont incite his hearers to action by reminding them of the deeds of Charles the Great and his son Louis, *qui regna Turcorum destruxerunt*. He turns the ancient Danube route into a military road, made by Charlemagne for his army. Cf. Gaston



Paris, *La Chanson du Pèlerinage de Charlemagne*, 1880; Jules Coulet, *Études sur l'Ancien Poème Français du Voyage de Charlemagne en Orient*, 1907.

9. *venit Constantinopolim Kalendis Augusti*: The Kalends of August would be August 1. Until the appearance of the *Recueil* edition of the *Gesta* this date was unquestioned. The *Recueil* editors, however, adopted the reading of *E*, *III. Kal. Augusti*, i. e. July 30, and both von Sybel, in the second edition of his *Gesch. des ersten Kreuzzuges*, and Hagenmeyer, in *Peter der Eremit*, accepted this emendation. Subsequently, Hagenmeyer reverted to his earlier opinion, and gave the date as August 1 in his edition of the *Gesta Francorum*, 1890, and in his *Chronologie de la Première Croisade* (1902). Nearly all the MSS. agree with *E*, but *C* has *in* (possibly a mistake for *iiij*) *kl. augusti*. Bongars is supported by two MSS. of Tudebod (*C* and *D*), which have the reading *i. Kal. Augusti*, and by Guibert of Nogent. Hagenmeyer follows Bongars in preference to the MS. authorities, and suggests that the figure *III* in the MSS. is due to a misreading of the last letter of the previous word, *Constantinopolim* (note, c. ii. 1, cf. ii. 36).

10. *Alamannorum*: Germans in general. *Alemanni* is frequently used for inhabitants of south-west Germany or for Swabians in particular.

10-11. *Lombardos et Longobardos*: Northern and Southern Italians. It is an indication of the Italian nationality of the Anonymous that he has the special knowledge which enables him to make this distinction.

12. *imperator*: Alexius I, Comnenus, 1081-1118.

13. *Brachium*: the Bosphorus or Hellespont, the 'Arm of St. George'. St. George of Cappadocia was martyred at Nicomedia on April 23, A.D. 303. His body was removed to Lydda in Palestine, but the scene of his martyrdom remained under his special protection and many churches and religious houses were dedicated to him in this district, among them a monastery at the entrance to the Straits. Ducange, *Gloss.*, *Brachium*; *Enc. Brit.*, 11th ed., *George*.

22. *Nicomedia*: the modern Ismid. Stephen of Blois, in a letter to his wife Adela, describes it as *urbem desolatam a Turcis*. *Epp. Steph. Carn.*, i; *Rec. des Hist. des Crois.*, *Hist. occ.*, iii.

25. *Rainaldus* [*Reinaldus*]: he led the Germans and Italians after their separation from the Franks at Nicomedia, and betrayed them to the Turks. He was probably a German, but he may be identical with *Rainaldus de Castro Breis* (Bray on the Seine?) who is mentioned by Albert of Aix.

26. *Romaniam*: Rūm, i. e. Rome, the Asiatic portion of the East Roman Empire. The Anonymous uses the term for Asia Minor, to the boundaries of Armenia and Syria (cf. c. xxi).

27. *Nicenam*: Nicea, called in c. vii *caput totius Romaniae*,



one of the chief towns of Rūm or Romania, was occupied by the Seljuk Turks in 1078. Raymond of Agiles calls it *urbs munitissima, tam natura quam ingenio*. Stephen of Blois, in his first letter to his wife, says that it was surrounded by walls and by more than three hundred lofty towers.

28. *Exerogorgo*. The position of this fort or castle has not been satisfactorily determined. Michaud, Le Prévost, following Poujoulat, and the *Recueil* editors, identify it with Eski-Kaleh (old castle), but Hagenmeyer has shown the topographical difficulties in the way of accepting this identification. Anna Comnena and Albert of Aix say that the Crusaders had to take the castle by force of arms (Hagenmeyer, *op. cit.*, *Chron. de la Prem. Croisade*, pp. 39, 40).

36. *quiest iii. Kal. Octobris*: Hagenmeyer omits these words, as a later interpolation in MSS. G (Bongars) and E (ER). He attributes the *in Kal.* of Bongars to a mistaken reading of the MS. figure III (*iiij Kal.*). On the other hand, the *in* of Bongars' original MS. may be the source of the III in E. In a previous case (c. ii. 9) Hagenmeyer argues that copyists may easily have read *im* as III. III Kal. Octob. is the right date, Sept. 29.

40. *flebotomarent*: *flebotomare*, (φλεβοτομέω) to bleed.

42. *piscinam*: *piscina* is an Apulian word for cistern, here used for a drain or sewer. *Piscinae enim vocabulo passim Apuli utuntur, ad significandas cisternas* (Ducange, *Gloss.*). The use of this local word is an indication of the nationality of the Anonymous.

50. *Nolite timere*: Matt. x. 28.

59. *signum*: target.

60. *Corosanum* [*Corrozanum* (c. xviii), *Corrozanum* (c. xxi)]: Khorāsān, the region south-east of the Caspian Sea which had formed part of the Caliphate of Hārūn ar-Rashīd (786–809). It had been conquered by the Seljuk Turks and was now nominally under the Abbasid Caliph of Baghdad, actually under the Turkish sultan. The Anonymous treats it as a province of Persia, lying east of Antioch (c. xxi). Einhard (*Vita Karoli*, xvi) calls Hārūn ar-Rashīd *Aaron rex Persarum*.

61. *Aleph* [*Alech* (E)]: Haleb, Aleppo. An emirate, ruled by Ridwan in 1096.

64. *Gualterius sine habere*: 'Sensaveor', 'Sine pecunia', 'Walter the Penniless'. He and his three brothers went with their uncle, a French knight, Walter of Poissi (*Galterius de Pexeio*) (cf. Ord. Vit. Lib. ix). Le Prévost suggests the derivation of the nickname from *Boissi-sans-Avoir*, near Montfort l'Amauri. Robert the Monk calls Walter *primicerius et signifer agminis Eremitae*. He was killed at Civitot.

*Cyuito, Ciuito* [*Civetot, Civitot, Chevetot*]: The editors of the *Recueil* identified this place with the modern Gemlik or Kemlik, the ancient Cius, on the Gulf of Mudania. This was the view of Peyré (*Hist. de la I<sup>re</sup> Croisade*, 1809). But Paulin



Paris had already shown, in his edition of Villehardouin's *Conquête de Constantinople* (Soc. de l'Hist. de France, 1838), that Civitot must be placed on the Gulf of Nicomedia. Villehardouin, an eyewitness, writes: 'Li Civetot siet ausinc sor le goffre de Nichonmie, de l'autre part devers Nique.' (Cf. *Chans. d'Ant.*, i. p. 22, note 3). Anna Comnena makes Helenopolis the camping-place of Peter the Hermit's host, and Hagenmeyer, in an exhaustive discussion of the subject in *Peter der Eremit* (pp. 180-4), summarized in *Gesta Francorum*, ii. 8, note 65, locates Civitot in the immediate vicinity of Helenopolis on the Gulf of Nicomedia. The name Civitot comes from the Greek *κιβωτός*, anchorage, roadstead. Hence it was given to the harbour which was built near Helenopolis, the modern Hersek.

86. *Persidem*: cf. notes, c. xxi.

## CHAPTER III. Page 5

1. *Sclauinia*: Croatia and Dalmatia; *per Dalmatiam*, according to Fulcher of Chartres. Cf. Raym. of Agiles: *Sclavonia est tellus deserta et invia et montuosa, ubi nec feras nec volucres per tres hebdomadas vidimus.*

2. *comes de S. Aegidio Raimundus*: Raymond of St. Gilles (S. Aegidius), south of Nîmes, Raymond IV, Count of Toulouse, called *Σαγγέλης* by Anna Comnena, Sanjil (*Saint Gilles*) by Ibn el-Athir. In a charter to Cluny of 1096 he styles himself *comes Tolosanorum et Rutenensium* (Rouergue), *dux Narbonae, marchio Provinciae* (Mansi, xx. 938, old ed.). He was the second son of Pons, Count of Toulouse, and on his father's death he divided the inheritance with his brother William, who became Count of Toulouse. He subsequently acquired the County of Toulouse, and kept it after his brother's death. He married the daughter and heiress of Bertrand, Count or Marquis of Provence, but the marriage was dissolved, as within the forbidden degrees of kinship. His second wife was an Italian-Norman, of the house of Hauteville; his third wife, a Spaniard of the ruling house of Castile, accompanied him on the Crusade. He seems to have been over fifty when he took the cross in 1095, but an Eastern chronicler states that he had already made a pilgrimage to Jerusalem, and had lost an eye in a quarrel with the Mohammedans. (Cf. *Introd.*, p. xxi.) This story is unsubstantiated, but Raymond appears to have been one-eyed, *vir monoculus* (cf. Guib. of Nogent, W. of Malmes.). He is also said to have fought against the Moors in Spain. For his later history, cf. notes, cc. xviii, xxxi, xxxiii, xxxiiii, xxxv, xxxix. He died in the Holy Land in 1105 (Vaissète et Devic, *Hist. du Languedoc*, iii, nouv. éd. 1873-89).

2-3. *Podiensis episcopus*: Adhémar de Monteil, Bishop



of Le Puy in Auvergne, the Papal legate and representative on the Crusade. The Crusading leaders, in a letter to the Pope, call him *tuum vicarium*. To the Anonymous he was the Crusaders' *rector et pastor* (c. xxx), to Raymond of Agiles he seemed 'another Moses', *alter Moyses*. He died at Antioch on August 1, 1098 (cf. *Introd.*, pp. xxi, xxv, xxix).

3-4. *antiquam Romae viam*: the Appian Way (*Via Appia*), from Northern Italy to Rome, Brindisi, and Bari.

4. *Boamundus*: Bohemund, or Bohemond, eldest son of Robert Guiscard and of his first wife Alberada (*Aubrée*). Ordericus Vitalis rightly calls him *Marcus Buamundus*, for his baptismal name was Marcus, and Bohemund, the name of a legendary giant, was given to him by his father *iocunde* as a nickname. Bohemund was the chief leader of the Italian-Norman Crusaders and is the hero of the first part of the *Gesta Francorum* (cf. *Introd.*, pp. xiii-xv, xx-xxi, xxiii-xxx).

5. *Richardus de Principatu*: son of William, Prince of Salerno, who was step-brother of Robert Guiscard. He married Tancred's sister. He took part in the battle of Dorylaeum (c. ix), sided with Tancred in his quarrel with Baldwin at Mamistra, settled in the Holy Land, and in 1100 was taken prisoner with Bohemund by Danishmend of Sivas.

*Rotbertus comes Flandrensis*: Robert 'of Jerusalem', Count of Flanders, son of Robert Friso Count of Flanders who died in 1093. In 1099-1100 Robert the Crusader returned to Europe. He is called *Georgii filius*, (*li fils saint Jorge*, *Chans. d'Ant.*, Ch. vi). He brought back an arm of St. George from the Crusade.

6. *Rotbertus Normannus* [*comes de Normannia, Normanniae*]: eldest son of William, the Conqueror of England. To raise money for the Crusade he pledged his duchy of Normandy to his brother William Rufus (E. A. Freeman, *W. Rufus*, i).

*Hugo Magnus*: Hugh, Count of Vermandois, brother of Philip I, King of France. *Li quens Hues-li-maines, frere au roi Phelipon* (*Chans. d'Ant.*, Ch. ii). The by-name *Magnus* seems to be due to a misunderstanding of the French word *maines* (from *minus*, Mod. *moins*), younger. Cf. *Chroniques universelles*: *Du roi Henri remesent dui fil, Phelipes ot non li ainsnes; li autres ot non Hues, en sousnon li maisnes*.

6-7. *Eurardus de Puisatio*: son of Hugh I, Seigneur of Le Puisac or Puiset near Janville, between Chartres and Orleans. He took an active part in the Crusade, both at Antioch and at Jerusalem.

7. *Achardus de Monte Merloi* [*A. de Mommellou* (c. xxxvii), *candidus capite* (Alb. of Aix: Lib. II, c. xxiii)]: Achardus of Montmerle (Dép. Ain) pledged his patrimony to the Abbot and monks of Cluny in return for money and mules when he went on Crusade. The pledge was never redeemed. According to the



*Gesta* (c. xxxvii) he was killed on an expedition to Jaffa in June 1099. (Cf. Hagenmeyer, *Chron. de la Prem. Crois.*, 1096, avril 12.)

7-8. *Isuardus de Musone* [*Usuardus de Musione* (CER)]: Raymond of Agiles mentions a Provençal Crusader called *Isoardus comes Diensis*, and Albert of Aix mentions among the followers of Raymond of Toulouse, *Luodewicus de Monzun, filius Tirrici de Muntbiliarht* (Lib. II, c. xxiii, *Rec. des hist. des Crois.*, *Hist. occ.*, iv, p. 317), or *Dirici de Monthiliart* (ed. Bongars). An *Olivier de Mouson* occurs in the *Chanson d'Antioche* (cf. ii, p. 348, Table). *Musone* is possibly, as the editor of the *Recueil* suggests, the castle of *Mousson*, which has given its name to *Pont-à-Mousson*. Mr. W. H. Stevenson connects *Isuardus* with the southern French name *Isnard* (Eisenhart). R. of Agiles has *Hisnardus* as a form of *Isuardus*, R. iii. 249.

9. *Brandosim . . . Barim . . . Otrentum*: Brindisi, Bari, and Otranto were the chief ports of embarkation from southern Italy for the East.

10. *Wilhelmus Marchisi filius*: Tancred's brother (cf. note, c. iv. 21-2).

11. *Durachium*: the ancient Epidamnus, the modern Durazzo.

12. *dux illius loci*: John Comnenus of Durazzo, the nephew of Alexius Comnenus, Governor of Durazzo.

19-20. *burgo urbis*: *burgus forensis*, *faubourg*, suburb. Cosmidium on the western shore of the Golden Horn, according to Hagenmeyer and Krebs (*Kritik Alb. v. Aachen*). Pera, on the south-east of the Golden Horn, according to von Sybel, Kugler (*Gesch. d. Kreuzz.*), and Chalandon (*Alex. Comnène*).

24. *Turcopolis*: the *Turcopules* were Greek auxiliaries of Turkish origin. Cf. Raymond of Agiles: *Turcopoli enim dicuntur, qui vel nutriti apud Turcos vel de matre Christiana patre Turco procreantur*.

25. *Pincinatis* [*Patzinaks*, *Petchénègues*]: the wild tribes, probably of Mongolian origin, who had settled between the Balkans and the Danube and were constantly at war with the Byzantine Greeks. In 1092, after a long period of struggle, Alexius I had defeated them with great slaughter. Those who survived were formed into a special corps in the Greek army (Chalandon, *Alex. Comn.* cc. i, iv).

37. *portam ciuitatis*: the Romanus gate (*Porta Sancti Romani*) in the north-west wall of the city.

#### CHAPTER IIII. Page 6

2. *Malfi Scafardi pontis*: Amalfi, on the Gulf of Salerno. The Anonymous shows his intimacy with the locality by distinguishing it from Melfi, between Naples and Bari. The siege of the rebellious town by the Italian-Normans began in July 1096. Various explanations are given of the words *Scafardi pontis*. *Scaphardus*, *scaphaldus* (Ducange, *Gloss.*) is the French



*échafaud*, the English *scaffold*. It may here mean a raised 'stepped' bridge, or the word *scaphardus* may here be connected with *scapha*, a boat. The early plagiarists felt the difficulty. Tudebod writes *Scaphardi Malfi scilicet Scaphardi pontis* [*Caphardi pontis*, Codd. BE]; Robert the Monk has *Malphi super litus Scaphardi pelagi*. Hagenmeyer suggests that this may mean 'the Sea of Sicardus', from Sicardus, prince of Benevento and Salerno, who conquered Amalfi in the ninth century.

6. *ostensionem* : a sign.

10. *signum* : Hagenmeyer follows Tudebod in reading *sonum*. The reading in the *Recueil* (ER) agrees with Bongars.

*Deus le volt* : the Italian Anonymous and the Italian author of the *Hist. belli sacri* use Italianized forms of the famous battle-cry, *Deus le volt*, *Deus lo vult* (*Hist. b. s.*). Bongars is here probably nearer to the original MS. than the other MSS. of the *Gesta* which have *Deus vult*, while the French Tudebod writes *Deus hoc vult*.

16. *Rogerus comes* : Roger, the 'Great Count' of Sicily, Robert Guiscard's brother.

21-2. *Tancredus Marchisi filius* : Tancred, son of Robert Guiscard's daughter Emma. His father was apparently either a marquis, called Odobonus by Ordericus Vitalis, and William by W. of Tyre, or, if the suggestion of Paulin Paris be accepted (*Chans. d'Ant.* ii. 370-2), a Saracen emir, called Makrisi. In the *Chanson d'Antioche* Tancred is described as *le fils Marquis*, and also as *le poulant* (*poulain*, of mixed Christian and Saracen, or Frank and Syrian blood), and *le fils à l'Amirant* (Emir). (Cf. *Recueil*, iii. 600 ; de Saulcy, *Bibl. de l'École des Chartes*, iv.)

22. *Rainulfus* : son of William, Prince of Salerno.

23. *Rotbertus de Ansa* : Anse (Dép. Rhone) or Anzi near Potenza in southern Italy.

23-4. *Hermannus de Canni* : the ancient Cannae in Apulia.

24. *Rotbertus de Surda valle* : Sourdeval (Dép. la Manche), according to Le Prévost (*Ord. Vit.* iii. 488) (cf. Röhricht, *Gesch. des ersten Kreuzzuges*).

24-5. *Rotbertus filius Tostani, et Hunfredus filius Radulfi* : these Crusaders are still unidentified.

25-6. *Richardus filius comitis Rainulfi* : son of the Rainulfus whose father was Will. of Salerno. Nephew of Richardus de Principatu.

26. *comes de Russinolo*, Russignolo : Ronciglione, north-west of Rome ; Roscignolo, near Salerno ; Rossano in Calabria ; or Roussillon in southern France.

27. *Boello Carnotensis* : Boello of Chartres. R. of Agiles says that he was the brother of a certain Fulcher of Chartres who was the first to mount the Firuz tower at Antioch in 1098.



*Alberedus de Cagnano* : Cagnano is situated to the north-east of Aquila in the Abruzzi. Alberedus was killed at Harenc (Areg) (c. xii) according to the *Hist. bell. sac.*

28. *Hunfredus de Monte Scabioso* : Monte Scaglioso, near Matera, in the Basilicata (S. Italy). Humphrey fell in the battle of Dorylaeum (c. ix). In cc. ix and xxvi he is called *Godefredus*, and he grants a charter as *Goffredus*.

29-30. *Bulgariae partibus* : Bulgaria included Thrace and Northern Macedonia.

32. *vallem de Andronopoli* : Hagenmeyer suggests Dropoli, the valley of the Drino.

42. *Castoriam* : the modern Kastur.

49. *Palagoniam* : the ancient Pelagonia. The Crusaders followed the *Via Egnatia*.

50. *haereticorum castrum* : these heretics may have been Paulicians, the heretical allies of the Patzinaks (notes, c. ix) (cf. Chalandon, *op. cit.*, p. 184, note 6).

54. *flumen Bardarum* : the river Vardar. The ancient Axios.

68-9. *In roga imperatoris* : *roga* is payment, *stipendium*, cf. R. of Agiles : *milites de roga imperatoris*.

## CHAPTER V. Page 9

3. *Corpalatium* [*Curopolates*, *Curator palatii* (Ducange, *Gloss.*)] : cf. *Major domus*, Mayor of the palace, *comes palatii*, &c. A palace official of high rank (von Sybel).

19. *Serra* : the ancient Serrhae in Macedonia, modern Sjer (Seres), near the river Struma, on the high road to Constantinople.

27. *Rusam* : Ruskoï, or Keshan, in Thrace, the Rossa of R. of Agiles, through which the army of Raymond of Toulouse passed (Chalandon, *op. cit.*, p. 185, note 5).

31. *Coenam Domini* : *Cena Domini*, Maundy Thursday, Thursday in Holy week. The day before was Wednesday, April 1, 1097.

41. *Pascha Domini* : Easter Day, April 5, 1097.

## CHAPTER VI. Page 10

3. *extra urbem* : Cosmidion. Godfrey had now crossed the Bosphorus. Cf. W. of Tyre, ii. 8, *ecclesiam sanctorum martyrum Cosmae et Damiani, quae hodie vulgari appellatione dicitur Castellum Boamundi* (Chalandon, *op. cit.*, p. 186).

24-5. *quoniam . . . praeteriret* : Anna Comnena knows nothing of this promise.

40. *hominium et fiduciam* : homage and fealty (Ducange, *Gloss. Hominium*). For the distinction between homage and



fealty cf. Pollock and Maitland, *Hist. Eng. Law*, ed. 1, Bk. II, ch. i, § 6. Homage is 'done', fealty is 'sworn'. The act of homage creates the close bond between lord and man, lord and vassal, landlord and tenant, the feudal relationship of 'vassalism'. The act of homage is usually followed by the oath of fealty (*fidelitas*). Here *hominium et fiduciam* are opposed to the less compelling oath which the Count of Toulouse took, which in its terms resembled the ordinary oath of fealty. (Cf. A. Luchaire, *Manuel des Institutions Françaises*, 1892, p. 184 seq.)

#### CHAPTER VII. Page 12

20. *stipites*: stakes or poles, on which the crosses were placed, to serve as sign-posts. The army of Raymond of Toulouse seems to have used stones to mark its passage through 'Sclavinia'.

#### CHAPTER VIII. Page 13

29. *arbalistae et sagittarii*: crossbowmen and archers.

37. *comes Stephanus*: Stephen, Count of Blois and Chartres, son of Theobald III, Count of Blois, who became Count of Champagne in 1047. Stephen married Adela, daughter of William the Conqueror. He was the father of King Stephen of England. For his later history cf. c. xxvii, notes.

38. *Rogerus de Barnavilla*: Le Prévost identifies Barnavilla with Barneville-sur-Mer (Manche). Hagenmeyer suggests Baronville, south of Dinand (Namur). Roger fought in the battle of the Iron Bridge in 1097 and was killed in 1098, in a sortie from Antioch (cf. *Chans. d'Ant.* ii. 309).

48. *lacus*: the lake Ascanius. Nicaea was on its eastern shore.

57-8. *sed . . . lacum*: these words are not in Bongars. They are inserted here from the *Recueil* (ER) and Hagenmeyer, as they are obviously needed to complete the passage.

58-9. *plenas Turcopolis*: the troops in the ships were commanded by Butumites. Tatikios (Taticius) and Tzita were also sent to reinforce the besiegers of Nicaea with troops.

#### CHAPTER IX. Page 17

5-6. *quendam pontem*: Hagenmeyer thinks that this was the bridge over the river Geukson, the ancient Gallus, a tributary of the Sangarius (Sakarija).

10. *vir Boamundus*: here there is a lacuna in Bongars, indicated by three asterisks between *vir* and *Boamundus*. Both Hagenmeyer and the editors of the *Recueil* print *vir Boamundus* without noticing this. The asterisks probably represent an illegible word in the MSS. used by Bongars. MS. C has *nobilis vir* in this place. *Nobilis* may well be the missing word,



though it may also be *sapiens*, an epithet which the Anonymous is fond of applying to Bohemund (cf. Introduction, p. xiii).

16. *Turci*: the subjects of the Seljuk Sultan of Iconium or Rūm, Kiliġ Arslān or Suleiman II, who is called by R. of Agiles and by Fulcher of Chartres *Solimannus*. The fight here described is the battle of Dorylaeum, July 1, 1097. Dorylaeum is the modern Eskishehr. The battle is well described by Oman, *Art of War*, vol. i, Bk. v, c. iii.

50. *Turcorum et Arabum et Saracenorum*: the Turks are the Seljuks. The Saracens are probably the Fatimite Egyptians.

69. *Agulani* [*Angulani*]: a name of uncertain application. Paulin Paris (*Chans. d'Ant.* ii. 305, *Agolans*) writes: 'Je crois que c'étoit les Affricains de Fez', but gives no reasons for his belief. Hagenmeyer thinks that the name may be connected with snake-like (*anguis*) clothing. A better suggestion is that the name is derived from the Arabic *aghwāl* (more destructive, most destructive). Cf. Eng. ghoul, from an Arabic root.

72. *Persarum*: cf. Fulcher of Chartres: *Turcis, scilicet paganis Persicis*. In the thirteenth century Joinville called the leader of the Charismian Turks 'li emperieres de Perse'. (*Hist. de St. Louis*, c. 102, § 528.)

*Publicanorum*: by *Publicani* the Anonymous means the Paulicians, a Manichaean sect which had taken deep root in Armenia and had spread into other parts of Asia Minor and into the Balkan Peninsula. The Paulicians had considerable political importance, as religious persecution led them to revolt against Christian authority and to ally with the Patzinaks against the Byzantine Greeks in Europe, and with the Mohammedan powers against the Christians in Asia. Hence they are classed with 'Turks, Persians, Saracens', &c. Cf. *Chans. d'Ant.*, Chant vii.:

'. . . . . Arabi et Persant  
Et tout li Amoraive et li Popelican  
Et Turc et Medien, une gent combatant,  
Cil de Samaire i furent et tout li Agolant.'

(Cf. Chalandon, *op. cit.*, c. iv, p. 103; R. L. Poole, *Illustrations of the Hist. of Med. Thought*, c. iii; Le Prévost, *Ord. Vit.* iii. 535; Gibbon, *Dec. and Fall of the Rom. Emp.*, c. liv.; Ducange, *Gloss., Populicani*.)

93. *Hermenios, Suranios*: Armenians and Syrians.

## CHAPTER X. Page 21

3-4. *Solimanus dux illorum*: Kiliġ Arslān (Turk. *kiliġ*, sabre; *arslān*, lion), Suleiman II, Sultan of Iconium, son of Suleiman I, a kinsman of Malik Shah. Suleiman II succeeded his father in 1086. The flight alluded to in the text was from Dorylaeum rather than from Nicaea. The dialogue with the ten thousand



Arabs probably echoes the gossip of the camp and the countryside. It is elaborated by Robert the Monk and by Guibert of Nogent.

39-40. *fuit mortua . . . equorum*: Hagenmeyer and the *Recueil* (ER) read *equitum*, and Hagenmeyer explains that the knights were not literally dead, but as their horses had died they ceased to be knights and became foot-soldiers.

43. *multones*: rams or sheep.

46. *Yconio* [*Ychonio* (C), *Iconio* (Ha), Iconium]: the modern Konia. One of the two chief cities of the Sultanate of Rûm.

52. *Erachiam*, *Heraclea*, *Eraclea*: the ancient Heraclea, the modern Eregli. P. Paris would identify it with the ancient Cybistra, von Sybel with the ancient Archalla. The ancient Claudiopolis has also been suggested (cf. *Rec.* iii. 767 (Cybistra); de Saulcy, *Bibl. de l'Éc. des Chartes*, iv. 505 (Archalla)).

59-60. *Illic diuisit se ab aliis Tancredus*: here the Anonymous digresses in order to describe the expedition of Tancred and Baldwin to Cilicia, an episode for which he is the most trustworthy authority, though his report is not that of an eye-witness. The parenthetical character of the digression, which ends with the words *plurima castra* (l. 58), is perhaps indicated by the marginal figure (X.) in Bongars' text.

62. *vallem de Botrenthrot* [Brotrentrot (ER), Botenthrot (C)]: according to Hagenmeyer, the valley in which the modern Bozanta, the ancient Podandus, is situated. Von Sybel also identifies Botrenthrot with Podandus, and points out that at this point the road from Adana to Constantinople emerges from the mountains (*op. cit.*, p. 304). The editors of the *Recueil*, Le Prévost and others, on the contrary, identify Botrenthrot with Güllek Boghas, to the south of Bozanta.

63. *Tarsum* [Tharsum (C)]: Tarsus, in Cilicia, on the river Cydnus. The birthplace of St. Paul. The town seems to have been inhabited by Greeks and Armenians and garrisoned by Turks (cf. *Introd.*, p. xxv).

96. *Athena*: the modern Adana. Albert of Aix says that a Burgundian named Welf, with an independent body of troops, had taken the town from the Turks. Tancred found the gates closed, but was admitted after negotiations. Ralph of Caen, with greater probability, says that an Armenian was in possession and that he invited Tancred to Adana. Archer (Archer and Kingsford, *The Crusades*) apparently accepts Albert's story; von Sybel follows Ralph of Caen (cf. von Sybel, *op. cit.*).

*Manustra* [*Mamistra* (CER)]: Missis, Messisse, the ancient Mopsuestia. Albert of Aix and William of Tyre expand the bare statement of the Anonymous and make Tancred storm the town and massacre the Turkish garrison. Ralph of Caen says that the Turks fled by night. It was here that the quarrel between Tancred and Baldwin led to actual fighting, followed by a reconciliation.



## CHAPTER XI. Page 24

3-4. *Hermeniorum . . . terram*: Armenia Minor, Lesser Armenia, the Armenian colony in Cilicia, which in 1097 was nominally subject to the Sultan of Baghdad. It should be distinguished from Greater Armenia, south-west of the Caspian Sea and south of Georgia. The Byzantine Emperor Basil II had weakened the power of the independent Christian princes of Armenia by his conquests and annexations, and in the second half of the eleventh century their remaining territory was conquered by the Seljuk Turks. The ancient capital, Ani, was taken, and in 1071 the Byzantine Greeks were decisively defeated on the Armenian battlefield of Manzikert. Armenian Christians, flying before the Turks, had occupied the Taurus ranges, and had found new homes in Mesopotamia, in the country between the Euphrates and the Taurus, and in Cilicia. The Anonymous seems to include part of Cappadocia in 'the land of the Armenians', as the Crusaders' route from Heraclea to Caesarea does not run through Lesser Armenia (cf. Hagenmeyer *Gesta Franc.* c. xi. 1, note 3; von Sybel, *op. cit.*; Oman, *Byz. Emp.*, cc. xix-xx; W. B. Stevenson, *Crusaders in the East*, pp. 21 seq., 175 seq.).

5. *quoddam castrum*: this castle has not been satisfactorily identified. Hagenmeyer guesses that it was either Kilissé Hissar, or, more probably, Develú Karahissar. Baudri of Dol says it was near the town of Alfia. Roger of Wendover (ann. 1097) says that Robert duke of Normandy took a city, called Azena, and gave it to Simeon, one of his knights. But no traces of a town called Alfia or Azena have been found in the district (cf. note, c. xi. 18).

7. *Symeon*: Hagenmeyer thinks that he was probably one of the smaller Armenian princes, 'native to the region', not, as R. of Wendover says, a follower of Robert of Normandy.

12. *Caesaream Cappadociae*: the ancient Mazaca, the chief city of Cappadocia, the residence of the old Cappadocian kings, and an important ecclesiastical centre. It was taken and plundered by the Turks in 1067 or 1068. Baudri of Dol speaks of it at the time of the First Crusade as *ad solum diruta*.

13. *quandam ciuitatem*: B. of Dol. and Ord. Vit. call this city *Plastencia*. Hagenmeyer would identify it with the modern Hadschin, or with Saris on the road from Caesarea to Marash. It is probably the stronghold (*firmissimum castrum*) mentioned by Stephen of Blois in his second letter to his wife, as the place of refuge of the Turkish prince Assan.

18. *Petrus de Alpibus* [*de Aliphi, de Aliph, Aluph* (Tud.), *Alphia* (Baudri), *Alfia* (Ord. Vit.)]: Baudri and Ordericus may have evolved the town *Alfia* (c. xi. 5) from this name.



Le Prévost identifies this Peter with a Provençal Pierre d'Aulphs, who successively served Robert Guiscard and the Greeks. Hagenmeyer refers to the *princeps* mentioned by Stephen of Blois (Epp. ii.), to whom the *firmissimum castrum* ('*Plastencia*') was entrusted, and thinks that P. de Alpibus was the Petrus Alipha who is said by Anna Comnena to have fled from Antioch. (Cf. notes, c. xxvii) (cf. Chalandon, *op. cit.*, p. 194, 'Tatikios qu'accompagnait Pierre d'Aulphs'.)

27. *Coxon*: the modern Gueuksun, on the river of the same name. The ancient Cocussus.

29. *alumni*: inhabitants.

32-3. *Turci . . . discessissent*: this was a false rumour. Cf. xi. 25, *audierunt Turcos esse in ciuitate*.

35-6. *Petrum de Castellione*: possibly Castillon in the Dordogne (Dép. Gironde) (Hagenmeyer). Tudebod and *Hist. b. sac.* say that he helped to defend *Machumaria* (c. xviii). He fought well at Marra (c. xxxiii). Albert of Aix mentions his good service at the siege of Nicaea, and at the later siege of Arsuf in 1099.

37. *Petrum de Roasa*: Le Prévost suggests Roaix (Vaucluse).

*Petrum Reimundum de Pul* [*de Alto Pullo . . .* (R. of Agiles)]: one of the *Machumaria* defenders. A follower of Raymond of Toulouse, he took part in the Invention of the Holy Lance. He died at Antioch, after its capture by the Crusaders.

43. *Vallem de Rugia*: Rugia (cf. c. xxxiii) is the modern Riha. The valley lay east of Antioch.

45. *persecutus est valde*: Tudebod adds: *misitque plenam hastam labris et nasibus Turcorum Raimundo comiti*.

48. *Rusam ciuitatem*: Bongars omits the name *Rusam*, which is found in *E* and other MSS. and in Tudebod. The editors of the *Recueil* are mistaken in confusing Rusa with Rugia. Fulcher of Chartres and other contemporary chroniclers distinguish between them. This Rusa remains unidentified.

49-50. *diabolicam montanam*: the eastern chains of the Antitaurus, between Cocussus and Marash.

53. *saumarius*: a sumpter-horse or pack-horse, a sumpter mule. Guib. of Nogent calls dogs *sagmarii*. (Cf. Ducange, *Gloss.*)

61. *Marasi*: [*Marasim*,] Marash. The town, which Fulcher of Chartres says was completely destroyed in 1114, stood high, overlooking a fertile plain. It was under an Armenian prince and was apparently mainly inhabited by Armenians, though Albert of Aix says that the castle or citadel had been occupied by Turks, who fled before the Crusaders arrived. He also says that the wife of Baldwin died at this time near Marash.



64. *Boamundus*: Bohemund had left the main army, to pursue the Turks.

65-6. *vallem, in qua regalis ciuitas Antiochia sita est*: the plain of Antioch, a day's journey in width and a day and a half's journey in length, according to Raymond of Agiles. The plain is girt about with mountains. The city of Antioch lies on the south bank of the river Orontes (cf. cc. xvii, xxxii. Cf. Archer and Kingsford, *Crusades*, c. iv, p. 63).

67. *beato Petro*: Antioch was a patriarchate, and St. Chrysostom (who was born at Antioch) and St. Jerome had taught that St. Peter was its first bishop. *Antiochia, in qua primicerius Apostolorum Petrus cathedram decoravit pontificalem* (Baudri of Dol. 101, 28. R. iv. 40 C.)

## CHAPTER XII. Page 27

1-2. *pontem Farreum [ferreum]*: the Iron Bridge, so called from the meaning of its Arabic name (*Jisr el Hadid*). The word *farreum, ferreum*, may refer to the river Far or Fer (*Farfar fluuius*), which Albert of Aix says flowed beneath it, or it may be connected with *ferreus*, iron. The bridge crossed the Orontes, which is vulgarly called Fer, about eight miles to the east of Antioch. Below it the river bends sharply to the west.

2. *cursores nostri*: Albert of Aix alone states that this force consisted of the mounted followers of Robert of Normandy, Roger of Barneville, and Euerard de Poisat (Puisac), with 2,000 foot-soldiers.

13. *ante portam ciuitatis*: Bohemund had now rejoined the main army. He took up his position before the East Gate of the city, also called St. Paul's Gate, *porta orientalis, quae dicitur S. Pauli* (W. of Tyre.); *porta, quae respicit ad Persidem plagam* (Alb. of Aix).

17. *tres portas ciuitatis*: the East Gate or St. Paul's Gate and two of the three northern gates, the Bridge Gate, the Duke's Gate, and the Dog Gate.

18-19. *alta . . . montanea*: Mons Casius, on the west and south of the city. The southern walls of Antioch were built along a ridge of the hills which 'run down from the mountains of Ansarieh to within half a mile of the river' (Archer and Kingsford, *op. cit.*, p. 65).

20. *Turci . . . in vrbe*: Yagi Sian, the Turkish emir, and his troops (c. xx).

30. *excommunicatis*: the Turks.

36. *Aregh [Harenc, Harem]*: a castle, east of the Iron Bridge, which commanded the road from Antioch to Aleppo. The ruins of this castle may still be seen.



43-4. *duo ex nostris*: one of these two was Alberedus de Cagnano (*Hist. b. sacri*, c. 37). Hermannus de Cani lost his horse (cf. notes, c. iiii. 23-4, 27).

48. *portam urbis*: St. Paul's Gate, before which Bohemund was encamped.

52. *Boamundi plateam*: the space in which Bohemund's tents were pitched.

### CHAPTER XIII. Page 28

3. *Maregart* [*Maregarz*, *Malreguart*]: perhaps the French word *Mauregard*. The fort or castle (*castrum*) was built on a spur of Mt. Casius, to the south of Bohemund's camp. (Cf. von Sybel, p. 325; Le Prévost, *Ord. Vit.* iii. 521.)

15. *stipendium*: provisions.

25. *Hierusalem et Damasco et Aleph*: Jerusalem was under the Turkish emir Sokman ibn Ortok, who was an ally of Yagi Sian. It was taken by the Fatimites in 1098. Damascus was governed by Dekak, and Aleppo by his brother, Ridwan. Dekak, with the Atābeg (minister, tutor, or guardian) Tughtigin, his stepfather (cf. Abulfeda), and with the emir of Emesa, Jenah ed daula, had gathered reinforcements at Caesarea to relieve Antioch. It was a body of these troops that attacked Bohemund and Robert of Flanders, and were repulsed near Elbara, south-east of Antioch. Both sides seem to have claimed the victory (cf. Kamāl ad-dīn), but the Turkish forces did not advance further towards Antioch at this time. Stephen of Blois counts this expedition among the 'seven sieges' of Antioch. (Cf. von Sybel, *op. cit.*, c. viii.)

40-1. *Nos . . . reuertentes*: the Anonymous took part in the Elbara raid.

### CHAPTER XIV. Page 30

12. *senescalcum*: the seneschal or *dapifer* (steward) was one of the most important of the feudal household officials. Here he is found acting in a military capacity as standard-bearer, *vexillifer episcopi* (R. of Agiles). The seneschal's functions usually included military, judicial, administrative, and domestic duties (Ducange, *Gloss.*, *Senescalcus*; A. Luchaire, *Manuel des Inst. Franç.*, 1892, Index, *Sénéchal*).

13. *flumen*: the Orontes.

17. *Tancredi montaneam*: Tancred had occupied a ruined monastery to the west of the city, not far from the George Gate. Here, on high ground, he afterwards built his fort or 'castle' (c. xix). (Cf. von Sybel, *op. cit.*, p. 336; Hagenmeyer, *op. cit.*)

19. *expendio*: *expendium* here means spoliation, devastation.



36. *purpuratis* [*yperperus*, *perperus*, *perpre*]: the Byzantine gold coin *ὑπέρπερος*. The Anonymous equates a *purpurus* with 15 *solidos denariorum*, i. e. 180 silver pennies, of which 12 went to a *solidus*. The *solidus* was not a coin at this time, but a unit of account, like an English guinea at the present day. An ass-load of food might therefore be worth 120 *solidos*, or 1,440 pence. The famine prices in the city and the scarcity of food are vividly described by Raymond of Agiles and Fulcher of Chartres. Raymond says that corn was so dear that it cost 7 or 8 *solidos* a night to feed a horse. Fulcher says that the famished people ate growing crops and nettles, horses, asses, camels, dogs, and mice. The very poor even ate the hides of beasts.

## CHAPTER XV. Page 31

i. *Wilhelmus . . . Carpentarius*: Vicomte de Melun, related to Hugh of Vermandois. He had gone through Hungary with the Germans under Emicho, escaped when they were cut to pieces near Wieselburg in August 1096, was brought to Constantinople as a prisoner of the Greeks, and subsequently joined the main army of Crusaders. He was a man of gigantic stature, coarse and rude in nature, *dictis potens sed opere parvus*, in the words of Guibert of Nogent, who cannot pardon him for his flight from Antioch. His by-name 'Carpenter' is explained by Guibert: *Carpentarius, non quia faber lignarius esset, sed quia in bellis cedendo, more carpentarii insisteret, dicebatur*; by Hagenmeyer (*P. der Eremit*, p. 18, note 1) as 'un simple sobriquet'; but Bréhier (*L'Église et l'Orient*, p. 68) calls him Guillaume le Chambellan. (Cf. P. Paris, *Chans. d'Ant.* ii. 339.)

*Petrus heremita*: after the defeat at Civitot Peter the Hermit spent the winter near Constantinople. In 1097 he joined the main Crusading army, and probably marched with the *pauperes*. In the *Chanson d'Antioche* he is among the *ribaues*. (Cf. P. Paris, *Chans. d'Ant.* ii. 3, note 3: 'Pierre l'Hermite est toujours chef de la *pietaille*; puis immédiatement au-dessous de lui venoit le *roi Tafurs* ou des *Tafurs*, c'est-à-dire le chef des mendiants, des gens sans aveu'.)

7. *vti mala res*: 'as a thing of nought'. Cf. Anglo-Saxon *niðing*.

*tenda*: a tent; only used in the Bongars edition. An Italian form.

14. *Hispania*: William the Carpenter had served against the Moors in Spain, but, according to Guib. of Nogent: *foede recessit et innumeros sua aversione fefellit*. (Cf. *Chans. d'Ant.* ii. 339.)



16. *Francigenae*: the Franks. Cf. R. of Agiles, R. iii. 244: *omnes de Burgundia et Alvernia et Gasconia et Gothi, Provinciales appellantur, ceteri vero Francigenae et hoc in exercitu, inter hostes autem omnes Francigenae dicebantur.*

26. *furtim recessit*: William the Carpenter fled to Alexandretta, where he joined Stephen of Blois, who had escaped from Antioch. Albert of Aix says that he went back to Constantinople and took part in the later Crusade of 1101.

#### CHAPTER XVI. Page 32

1. *inimicus Tetigus* [*Titidus* (Tud.), *Tatic* (R. of Agiles), *Tatikios*, *Taticius*]: the Byzantine imperial representative, who was appointed to accompany and support the Crusaders with a force of Greek soldiers, and to take over the cities won by them in the name of the Eastern Emperor. He was *primicerius*, a highly placed palace official and military commander. To the Anonymous he is an 'enemy' because he was opposed to Bohemund's policy and because he left the Crusading army in the time of its greatest need. For a discussion of the questions arising out of the conduct of *Tatikios* at Antioch, cf. *Introd.*, p. xxvii. (Hagenmeyer, *op. cit.*; von Sybel, *op. cit.*; Chalandon, *op. cit.*; Röhrich, *op. cit.*)

4. *cismare*: MSS. *B*, *C*, and *E*, with the *Recueil* editors, omit this passage altogether. Hagenmeyer (*Gest. Franc.* xvi, 1, note 4) adopts the reading *seminare* (*al. machinari*) from Tudebod. *Cismare* is derived from the Greek *σχίσμα*, Lat. *schisma*, a schism. There is an old English form *cisme* (*Oxf. Dict.*, *schism*). The meaning would be to divide, to separate, or perhaps here to feign false opinions, such as a schismatic might hold. It is worth noting that the Greek word occurs in the passage which treats of the Greek *inimicus*. It seems arbitrary to reject it.

15. *papilio*: tent; Fr. pavillon.

24. *Cyprum*: Cyprus still formed part of the Byzantine Empire. It was in constant communication with the port of St. Simeon and Antioch, and was used by the Crusading army as a base for supplies. The Patriarch of Jerusalem, Simeon, had taken refuge in the island.

#### CHAPTER XVII. Page 33

2. *gentem Turcorum*: Ridwan of Aleppo and his allies.

13. *fluvium et lacum*: the Orontes and the great Lake of Antioch, to the north-east of the city, in the plain. Abulfeda calls this lake *Bohayret Antakia*; the Turkish name for it is *Ak Dengis*, *Dengis Aga*. Cf. Oman, *op. cit.*, vol. i, Bk. v, c. iii, 'the great lake of Begras'.



14. *exploratores*: Albert of Aix says that these scouts were Walter de Dromedart and a newly baptized Turk, Bohemund's godson.

40. *conostabili* . . . *Rotberto filio Girardi* [*Conostabilis, comes stabuli, constable*]: the constable, like the seneschal, was a great feudal household official (cf. Luchaire, *Man. des Inst. Franç*; Index, *Connétable*). Robert Fitz Gerard may have been a kinsman of Bohemund. He acted as standard-bearer in this battle, and is called in the *Hist. belli sacri*: *fortissimus et honorabilis signifer*. After the conquest of Jerusalem he served under Godfrey of Bouillon.

52. *linguae* . . . *vexilli*: the tongues or points of the banner or standard. Bohemund's banner was red (*rubicundum*, F. of Chartres) with a snake on it, according to a Provençal version of the *Chans. d'Ant*.

59. *castrum suum*: Harenc.

68. *portam ciuitatis*: St. Paul's Gate, before which Bohemund was encamped. The Egyptian ambassadors were quartered in this part of the camp.

69. *Ammirati Babyloniae* [*Ammiratus, Amiralus, Ammiravisus*]: the modern *emir*, *amir* (Ducange, *Gloss.*, *sub voc.*). The word *admiral* comes from it (*Oxford Dict.*, *sub voc.*). *Babylon* is Cairo, the seat, since 962, of the heterodox Shiite Fatimite Caliphate. The name *Babylon*, strictly speaking, refers to the old fortress, at some distance from the modern Cairo, which is said to have been built by one of the later Pharaohs to receive the Babylonian mercenaries in the Egyptian service (E. J. Davis, *The Invasion of Egypt by Louis IX of France*, &c., 1897). Cf. 1 Peter, v. 13, 'The church that is at Babylon . . . saluteth you'. The emir mentioned in the text was al-Afdal, emir or vezir of the reigning Fatimite caliph Mustali (1094-1101). The Franks had sent an embassy to Egypt from Nicaea, and their ambassadors had now returned, accompanied by al-Afdal, who hoped to conclude an alliance with the Crusaders.

## CHAPTER XVIII. Page 36

11. *Machumariam* [*Bafumaria* (R. of Agiles)]: *Machumaria* means a Mohammedan temple or mosque (cf. *Machomet*, c. xxi). There were two mosques on a hill, opposite the Bridge Gate, on the right bank of the Orontes, commanding the road from Aleppo to the port of St. Simeon. Cf. R. of Agiles: *habebat* . . . *civitas pontem quasi inferiori angulo occidentali, et monticulum quemdam adversum nos, ubi duae erant bafumariae et quaedam sepulcrorum casalia*.

17-18. *portum S. Simeonis*: the harbour at the mouth of



the Orontes. It was also called *Sedium*, *Sulinus*, *Suaidieh*, and by Anna Comnena, *Sudei* (Σουδεῖ). William of Tyre identifies it, perhaps erroneously, with the ancient Seleucia (Hagenmeyer, *Gesta Franc.* xviii. 2, note 11). St. Simeon and his disciples occupied a monastery in the neighbourhood, on Mt. Casius. Hence the name, 'the port of St. Simeon'. Genoese ships were lying in this harbour.

26-7. *exierunt extra ciuitatem*: by the Bridge Gate.

34. *illam gentem*: the workmen and sailors who were being escorted from the port of St. Simeon, to help in the building of the fort.

68. *pontis columnas*: the pillars or piers of the bridge. The plight of the retreating Turks, struggling back to the city, was desperate, as Yagi Sian had ordered the Bridge Gate to be closed.

79. *duodecim Ammiralii*: Raymond of Agiles and Albert of Aix practically agree with the estimate of the Turkish loss in the *Gesta*, though Raymond does not include those buried in the city or drowned in the river. Stephen of Blois more than doubles the numbers. Robert the Monk puts them still higher, and one manuscript of the *Chanson d'Antioche* (Chant iv) gives a total of 10,000, of whom 1,500 were drowned.

86. *spiculando*: throwing darts or javelins.

107-8. *nuntiis Amiralii de Babylone*: Albert of Aix says that the Egyptian embassy had gone to the port of St. Simeon with Bohemund and Raymond of Toulouse, in order to return to Cairo.

116. *ad portam*: this reading is found in MSS. *B*, *C*, and *E*, and is accepted by the editors of the *Recueil*. Hagenmeyer rejects it for *portum*, the reading in Tudebod and in Baudri of Dol. As 'port' is here coupled with 'mountains', as there was mountainous country to the north of the harbour, and as Raymond of Agiles writes, *victualium conductores ire et redire a portu potuerunt*;—*portum* may be the original word, but the authority for *portam* is strong, and the victory of March 6 must have given the Crusaders easier access to the Bridge Gate (*portam urbis, ubi pons est*), over the bridge which their new fort (*Machumaria*) commanded, and to the mountains on the left bank of the Orontes. This explanation seems to fit the words of c. xix: *omnes semitae pene prohibitae . . . erant Turcis*. The great object of the besiegers was to blockade the gates of the city.

#### CHAPTER XIX. Page 40

2. *incisae*: 'trenched'.

3. *castrum et . . . monasterium*: Tancred's fort (cf. c. xiv). It was on high ground to the west of the city, on the left bank of the Orontes, opposite the Gate of St. George, the *ciuitatis*



*portam* of the next sentence, described by R. of Agiles as *porta, quae respicit ad meridiem iuxta fluvium*.

9-11. *Plures . . . unum*: these words are only found in Bongars, and in the plagiarists, Tudebod, Baudri, Guibert, and the *Hist. belli sacri*. The editors of the *Recueil*, following E, omit them.

15. *deuetabo*: *vetare*, to forbid, hinder, veto.

15-16. *continuo . . . argenti*: *continuo* means straightway, at once. The mark of silver was a unit of account and weight, not a coin. It varied in value at different periods and in different places, but it usually, in the Middle Ages, equalled either  $\frac{2}{3}$  or  $\frac{1}{2}$  a pound sterling, according to the meaning given to the pound. It is sometimes equated with the weight of a pound. *Marca dicitur pondus argenti unius librae* (*Papias*, eleventh century). Hagenmeyer (*Gesta Franc.* xxxix. 18, note 86) accepts this equation. 'Eine *marca argenti* ist ein Pfund Silber,' but cf. Ducange, *Gloss.*, *Marca*: *Apud nos . . . marca duplicata libram efficit quae dividitur in 16 uncias*. In England it equalled  $\frac{2}{3}$  of a pound, 13 shillings and 4 pence.

## CHAPTER XX. Page 42

2. *Pirus* [*Pirrus*, *Pyrrus*, *Pyrrhus*, *Firuz* (Ibn el-Athir: *Kamâl ad-dîn*), *Feirus* (W. of Tyre.), *Daciens* (*Chans. d'Ant.*, probably a confusion with *Yagi Sian*)] : he has been variously described as a Turk, an Armenian, and a Persian, a pervert to Mohammedanism, a convert to Christianity, and an Armenian Christian. The story of his treachery was embroidered and elaborated by writers on both sides. It is found in a picturesque form in the *Chanson d'Antioche*, where *Daciens li Turs*, influenced by what he hears of 'the army of God' (*l'ost Dieu*) from his son, who has been a prisoner in the Crusaders' camp and has become a Christian, dreams that God has commanded him to deliver Antioch. After conferring with Bohemund, and murdering his own too-inquisitive wife, he betrays the city, and is finally baptized with his son. Fulcher of Chartres, who calls the treachery which gave Antioch to the Crusaders *fraudem et non fraudem*, makes Christ appear twice to 'a certain Turk' and bid him surrender Antioch to the Christians. Ralph of Caen and Kamâl ad-dîn treat the treachery as the result of a grudge against Yagi-Sian. The simple statement of the Anonymous is probably accurate enough. Bohemund himself, in the letter which the Crusading leaders sent to Urban II after the death of the bishop of le Puy (F. of Chartres, R. iii. 351) writes: *Ego Boamundus, conventionem factam cum quodam Turco, qui ipsam mihi tradidit civitatem, scalas . . . muro*



*applicui.* (Cf. Hagenmeyer, *op. cit.*; von Sybel, *op. cit.*; *Chans. d'Antioche.*)

3. *pulsabat*: examined, questioned.

7-8. *Tres turres custodio*: the fortifications of Antioch, *muris et turribus et antemuralibus munita* (R. of Agiles) were 'erected by Justinian, and remodelled in the tenth century by the engineers of John Zimisces and Basil II' (Oman, *op. cit.*, vol. ii, Bk. vii. c. ii, pp. 27-28). The city was taken from the Saracens by Nicephorus Phocas and again captured by the Seljuk Turks in 1084. The system of fortification was justly celebrated, and, combined with the natural defences of mountain and river, rendered the place almost impregnable. In c. xxxii the Anonymous says that the city was enclosed with a double wall with 450 towers on the 'greater' wall. Sir Charles Oman gives a clear reconstruction of the defences in his *Art of War*, vol. ii, Bk. vii. c. ii, and a plan of the siege and battle of Antioch (vol. i, Plates vii, viii). There was 'a line of curtain, in which towers were placed at frequent but irregular intervals'. The towers had three storeys, and were about 60 feet high. 'No one could walk for a quarter of a mile along the enceinte without passing through six or seven towers'. It was thus quite possible for Firuz to guard three towers, though Ralph of Caen only mentions one. The tower by which the Crusaders entered the city was at the north-western corner, on the mountain flank, above the Gate of St. George. W. of Tyre calls it the tower of the 'Two Sisters', *turris quae vulgari appellatione dicitur duarum Sororum*. (Cf. plans in Rey, *Architecture Militaire des Croisés en Syrie*, Paris, 1871; E. Heyck, *Die Kreuzzüge*, 1900, p. 39, pp. 10-11, Plates. Cf. Hagenmeyer, *op. cit.*; von Sybel, *op. cit.*)

18. *ingeniare*: here, to storm with military engines.

26. *Azimitarum*: from ζύμη, *fermentum*. Applied to those who used unleavened bread for the Sacrament of the Mass. Here it may refer to Maronites and Armenian Christians, but the name was often given by the Greeks to the Latin Catholics.

53. *Malam coronam*: 'Evil tonsure'. The *corona* or 'crown' was the clerical tonsure.

64. *ascendit Boamundus*: Hagenmeyer and the *Recueil* editors here read *descendit*, with Tudebod, and explain it as 'dismounted'. Bohemund 'got down' from his horse. Guib. of Nogent has *de equo desiluit*.

68. *scalam*. From the letter of the Crusading leaders to Urban II (F. of Chartres, R. iii. 350, G.) it appears that Bohemund himself first fastened the ladder to the wall. *Ego Boamundus . . . scalas ante diem parum muro applicui*. It was a rope-ladder, made of hide, according to Alb. of Aix. When it



broke, Firuz is said by Albert to have thrown down a rope, that the ladder might be made fast again. One Eastern chronicler makes the Franks get into the city by a grated window, which Firuz opens.

69. *merulas*: an Italian form. Ramparts, battlements; French *créneau* (cf. Ducange, *Gloss.*, *sub voc.*) *Menia*, *moenia*, in MSS. *B* and *E*, and in the *Recueil* edition. The English *merlon*, the part of the crenelling between the embrasures.

73-4. *Micro Francos echome*: Μικροὺς Φραγκοὺς ἔχομεν. The only Greek sentence in the book, and the Anonymous thinks it prudent to translate it (Hagenmeyer, *G.F.*, *Einleit.*, p. 38).

76-7. *seruiens Longobardus*: Baudri calls this Lombard *Paganus*, and makes him the first to mount the ladder. R. of Agiles and R. of Caen ascribe that honour to a Frenchman, *Fulcherius . . . frater Budelli Carnotensis* (cf. c. iv) or *Gonel Carnotensis*, (R of Caen).

79. *tres turres habemus*: were these the three towers which had been entrusted to Firuz? Von Sybel (*op. cit.*) treats the statement in the *Gesta* (c. xx. 7. 8) that Firuz guarded three towers as an error on the part of the Anonymous.

82-3. *Nos . . . clamabamus*: the Anonymous took part in the attack. He entered the city by the postern, not by the ladder.

86. *fratrem . . . Pirri*: in the *Chanson d'Antioche* Firuz urges his brother to become a Christian, and when he refuses, calls on the Frankish barons, and his brother is killed by Count Robert of Flanders.

90. *porta . . . in sinistra parte*: R. of Agiles describes this *porta* as *posterula*. Albert of Aix calls it *posticum*. It was probably one of the small posterns of which there were several in the west wall. It would be, as Hagenmeyer points out, to the north of the tower of the Two Sisters, in the direction of the Orontes.

97. *castello*: the citadel of Antioch. It stood on the middle spur of Mt. Casius, to the south of the city: *in medio collis castellum aliud, quod lingua Graeca Colax* (Gr. κόλαξ) *vocatur* (R. of Agiles); *castrum, quod in rupe celsa est situm* (F. of Chartres). Bohemund planted his standard on the opposite hill, which was lower than the height on which the citadel was built. The *castrum* in which the flying Turks took refuge was this citadel.

106. *Cassianus* [*Yagi Sian*; *Bagui-Syan* (Ibn el-Athir), *Jaghi-Seian* (Abulfeda), *Garsion* (*Chans. d'Ant.*): for other forms of this name cf. Hagenmeyer, *G. F.* xx. 10, note 66]: Abulfeda and W. of Tyre (Lib. IV, c. xi) say that he was a Turk of the family of Alp Arslan (Belfetoh, W. of Tyre). The great Sultan Malik Shah, his kinsman, is said to have placed



him in charge of Antioch in 1086 (Matth. of Edessa). He was a very powerful prince, described by R. of Caen as second only to the Sultan of Persia. (Cf. von Sybel, *op. cit.*, c. viii; Le Prévost, *Ord. Vit.* iii. 541.)

109. *Tancredi terram*: Hagenmeyer understands this to refer to the *Montanea Tancredi* on the west and south-west of Antioch (cf. c. xiv). Le Prévost (*Ord. Vit.* iii. 541) explains it as that part of Cilicia which Tancred had already conquered, including the towns of Mamistra, Alexandretta, Laodicea, &c.

110. *casale*: a village. Cf. Joinville, *Hist. de St. Louis* lxii, § 310, 'Et ainsi mena le roy jusques au kasel'.

113-14. *truncaueruntque caput*: 'Caput vero mirae grossitudinis erat, aures latissimae et pilosae, capilli cani cum barba, quae a mento usque ad umbilicum eius profluebat' Albert of Aix, *R.* iv, p. 407; *Lib.* iv, c. xxvi).

117. *bizanteis*: The bezant or byzant was a gold coin, which took its name from Byzantium or Constantinople, where it was first struck. Originally it seems to have equalled the Roman *solidus* or *aureus*, but later it varied in value from about twenty English shillings to ten shillings or less. There were also silver bezants, and Ducange says that the Sultans of Iconium struck 'Saracen' bezants. The term was not used by the Greeks themselves. (Murray, *Oxford Dict.*; Ducange, *Gloss.*; Hagenmeyer, *G.F.* xviii. 10, note 60.) Cf. W. of Malmesbury, *G.R.* *Lib.* iv, § 354, *R.S.* ii, p. 410. *Imperatorum nummi Bizantini vocati.*

## CHAPTER XXI. Page 46

1. *Curbaram*: the emir of Mosul, *Kerboga*, *Kerbogha*, *Kerbuga* or *Kurbugha*, called *Kiwam ed-daula*, Pillar of the Kingdom. His name is variously given by the western chroniclers as *Curbaram*, *Curbaran*, *Corbalan* or *Corbaan* (Tudebod), *Corbaga* or *Corbaras* (R. of Agiles), *Corbagath* (F. of Chartres), *Corbanas* or *Curbanas* (*Hist. belli sacri*), *Corbarans d'Oliferne* (*Chans. d'Antioche*), &c. As an explanation of *Oliferne*, Paulin Paris suggests either Mesopotamia, a region to which this name is given in the *chansons de geste*, or Aleppo. Hagenmeyer tentatively connects it with Botrun (Offrun in W. of Tyre). As Emir of Mosul Kerboga was one of the greatest vassals of the Persian Sultan. F. of Chartres describes him as *dux et satrapa regis Persarum*; Albert of Aix as *secundus a rege*.

1-2. *Soldani Persiae*: Barkiarok, Barkiyāroq, the Persian Sultan who ruled at Baghdad from 1092 to 1102. He was a Seljuk Turk, the eldest son of Malik Shah. Soldan or Sultan is an Arabic word, meaning King, sovereign, power, dominion. not, as Ordericus Vitalis explains it, *quasi solus dominus, quia*



*cunctis praeest Orientis principibus.* Cf. *Itinerarium Regis Ricardi*, Lib. I, c. iii: *Et sicut principes nostri imperatores dicuntur vel reges, sic apud illos, qui praeminent Soldani, quasi soli dominantes, nominantur* (*Memorials, &c., of Richard I*, vol. i, R.S.).

10-11. *Calipha illorum Apostolico*: cf. c. i. Cf. R. of Agiles (R. iii, 277, H.): *Papa Turcorum . . . de genere Mahumet* (Mohammed). The Abbāsid Caliph at Baghdad, Al-Mostadher billah reigned from 1094 to 1118.

11. *iter longae viae*: Kerboga seems to have spent some time in besieging Edessa on his way to relieve Antioch.

11-12. *Hierosolymitanus Ammiralius*: Mo'in ed Daula Sokmān, son of Ortok. When in 1095 his brother, the emir of Jerusalem, was put into fetters by Dekak, emir of Damascus, ed Daula Sokman intervened and took possession of Jerusalem. He had allied with Ridwan of Aleppo, Dekak's brother, against the Franks at Harenc in February 1098, and he now responded to Yagi Sian's appeal for help, though they had formerly been enemies.

13. *Rex Damasci*: Dekak, emir of Damascus. He was the brother of Ridwan, emir of Aleppo, and the son of the Sultan Tutusch. His stepfather and *Atābeg* or minister was Tughtigīn, the *Doldequinus* of William of Tyre.

16. *Curtos*: Kurdistan takes its name from the Kurds, an Aryan people, which gave birth to Saladin. 'From time immemorial the Kurds have led the same wild pastoral life in the mountain tracts between Persia and Asia Minor'. (Stanley Lane-Poole, *Saladin* (Heroes of the Nations), p. 4.)

23. *collegium*: *exercitum*, army.

24. *Sensadolus*: Shems ed daula, son of Yagi Sian. With his brother he was sent to the Mohammedan princes to appeal for help against the Franks. He went to Damascus and probably to Emesa and Arabia, while his brother, Mohammed Asfar, appealed to Kerboga and the eastern emirs.

28. *oppido*: this *oppidum* was the citadel of Antioch.

31. *patrauere*: *patrare*, to bring to pass, accomplish.

36. *proficuo*: *proficuum*, i. e. profit, gain.

48. *turrim*: the tower at the east end of the Iron Bridge.

50-1. *maiore bello*: the battle of June 28, 1098, with Kerboga.

52-3. *duo flumina*: the Orontes and its tributary the Karasu or Japhta, which flows into it to the east of Antioch, between the city and the Iron Bridge (Hagenmeyer, *G.F.* xxi. 5, note 36).

54. *ammiraliū*: the emir Ahmed ibn Meruan (Kamāl ad-dīn). Fulcher of Chartres (R. iii. 347) calls him *Maroane*. He had subsequently to surrender the citadel to the Crusaders.



He eventually became a Christian (Hagenmeyer, *G.F.* xxii. 1, note 4; xxix. 11).

59-63. *adhuc . . . possum . . . priusquam . . . stimulo*: The text of Bongars now becomes somewhat turgid and long-winded, and the other MSS. make 'cuts' in the interest both of brevity and of sense. The above passages, which are omitted in the *Recueil* edition and in all the MSS. except *G* (*Bongars*), are merely redundant. In later cases the text seems to be actually corrupt.

78. *nomina*: this reading is also found in Tudebod and in the *Historia belli sacri*. All the extant MSS. and the *Recueil* edition have *omnia*.

79. *Amazonia flumina*: the Amazons, the warlike women whose story was familiar to all medieval readers of Orosius, were said to dwell on the river Thermodon, in north-eastern Asia Minor, in the province of Pontus.

82. *Scribe . . . chartas*: Comte Riant regards the letter of Kerboga to the Caliph as a clumsy imitation of genuine Mohammedan letters which had fallen into the hands of the Crusaders, but he does not reject its substance as impossible. Hagenmeyer treats it as pure fiction, on a par with the conversations between Kerboga and his mother. The construction of the letter is suspiciously awkward. It introduces phrases which the Anonymous has used elsewhere in other connexions, such as the very improbable oath *per Machomet et per omnia Deorum nomina* (cf. cc. xxii, xxxix), or the description of the Christian kinsmen of the Turks, who were driven from Romania and Syria and 'the royal city', Antioch (cf. c. xi). In conclusion, Kerboga boasts of his resolve to win, not only the Asiatic lands and Bulgaria, but, an unexpected addition, Apulia, the home-land of the Anonymous, a touch which betrays the probable source of the letter. Such fictitious letters and speeches were quite in the taste of the time, and were, indeed, a recognized form of literary expression, in which boys were trained by school exercises.

90. *patrare*: here meaning *generare*.

94. *heu! certare*: the passage *qualiter . . . purissimum* is only found in Bongars, Tudebod, and the *Historia belli sacri*. The text in Bongars is evidently corrupt, and Hagenmeyer is probably justified in following Tudebod and the *Hist. belli sacri* in reading *certare* for *certate*, *colata* for *colorata*, and *ceu* for *seu*, readings which are adopted in this edition. It may have been this obscurity which caused most of the copyists to omit the whole passage, but the words *certare*, *colata*, *ceu*, may also have been read as *certate*, *colorata*, *seu*, by Bongars himself, or by his printer. There is other evidence that he had some difficulty in deciphering his MSS. (c. ix). In connexion



with the word *colata*, Hagenmeyer calls attention to Malachi, iii. 3 : *et purgabit filios Levi et colabit eos quasi aurum et quasi argentum* (G.F. xxi. 7, note 60).

104. *Indiam* : Bongars has *Iudaeam* and the editors of the *Recueil* accept this without question. Hagenmeyer prefers the reading *Indiam* in Tudebod (*Codd. A, C, D*) and in the *Hist. belli sacri*. This agrees with the parallel passage in c. xxi, where the Anonymous also speaks of the past conquests of the Christians in Rūm and Syria, and of their desire to extend their boundaries 'beyond the confines of Chorāsān' and to wipe out the Turkish name 'beyond the Amazonian rivers'. Upper (*superior*) India corresponds better than Upper Judaea with this description and with the geographical terminology of the Anonymous, while the change from *Indiam* to *Iudaeam* or *Iudeam* would be easily made by a scribe. Cf. *Chans. d'Ant.*, Chant VII. x : 'li emperieres d'Inde superiour', and the comment of P. Paris (ii, p. 149, note 1) : 'L'Inde superiour fut bientôt après célèbre en Occident, comme empire du Prestre-Jean'. For the reading *Iudaeam*, however, it may be urged that it is found, not only in Bongars, but in two MSS. (*B* and *E*) of Tudebod.

## CHAPTER XXII. Page 50

1. *Mater vero eiusdem Curbaram* : 'Calabre' or 'Kalabra' (*Rom. de Godefr. de Bouillon*), mother of Kerboga, is not mentioned by the eastern chroniclers, but in the western romances and the chronicles which drew from them, she appears as a wise old sorceress, full of years and of occult lore : 'De la loi Païenie fu moult sage letrée' (*Chans. d'Ant.* ch. i. xxviii). 'Vielle fu et mousue (blear-eyed) et des ars bien sachant', 'Del soleil, de la lune et d'estoile tournant' (*Ibid.*, ch. v. xxxviii). An elaborate and fantastic tale grew out of the modest fancies of the Anonymous and Tudebod. The *Chanson d'Antioche* makes 'Calabre', the daughter of 'Rubiant', 'lord of the two Gates of the world'. The *Roman de Godefroi* says that she was the sister of both Yagi Sian and Ortok (*Corbados*) of Jerusalem. (Cf. *B. of Dol.*, *Guib. of Nogent*, *Robert the Monk*.)

2. *statim : denuo* in the MSS. and in the *Recueil*. The *Chans. d'Ant.* mentions more than one visit of Kerboga's mother to her son. She appears first in the camp before Civitot (Ch. i. xxvii) and again later, when Kerboga is preparing to attack the Franks at Antioch (Ch. v. xxxviii (probably an interpolation), Ch. vii. vii seq.).

34. *Dissipa . . . volunt* : Psalm lxvii. 31 (Vulgate).

35-6. *Effunde . . . inuocauerunt* : Psalm lxxviii. 6, *Psalmus Asaph* (Vulgate).



42. *filiī Christi : filiī Dei* (*Hist. belli sacri*). Cf. John i. 12, xiii. 33 ; Rom. viii. 14, 16 seq. ; Gal. iii. 26.

43-4. *filiī . . . promissionis* : Rom. ix. 4, 8. Cf. Gal. iii. 17 seq.

44. *haeredes Christi* : Rom. viii. 17.

46-7. *A Solis . . . contra vos* : cf. Deut. xi. 24, 25 ; Jos. i. 4, 5.

52. *euerteris* : *evertō*, to overturn, overthrow, subvert, destroy.

54. *exerta* : *exsero*, to thrust out, stretch out. Guib. of Nogent has *effusa ira*.

57-8. *perditurus . . . habita* : thou wilt lose all thy present possessions.

68-9. *in nostra pagina et in gentilium voluminibus : nostra pagina* refers to the Koran, though it contains no such prophecies. The *volumina gentilium* are the non-Mohammedan books, the prophetic writings of the Scriptures and perhaps also the *Sibylline Oracles*, Apocalyptic writings composed by Jews, and later by Christians of the second and third centuries A. D., in imitation of the ancient Sibylline Books, to win the heathen to their faith. Liutprand, who visited Constantinople in A. D. 968, writes in his *Relatio de legatione Const.*, c. 38 : *Habent Graeci et Sarraceni libros, quos ὁράσεις, sive visiones Danielis vocant, ego autem Sibyllinos ; in quibus scriptum reperitur, quot annis imperator quisque vivat ; quae sint futura, eo imperitante, tempora ; pax an simultas, secundae Sarracenorum res an adversae*. Many prophecies, early and later, of the eternal dominion of the Roman Empire and of the subjection of the heathen to Christian rulers were probably known to the Anonymous (Hagenmeyer, *G.F.* xxii. 8, notes 33, 34, 35 ; *Enc. Brit.*, ed. 11, *Sibylline Oracles* ; H. A. L. Fisher, *The Medieval Empire*, I, c. i). Cf. Godfrey of Viterbo : *Pantheon* in *Mon. Germ. Hist.* SS. xxii. 375, for one such prophecy : *Rex Romanorum omne sibi vendicet regnum christianum. Omnes ergo insulas et civitates paganorum devastabit et universa idolorum destruet templa et omnes paganos ad baptismum convocabit, et per omnia templa crux Christi erigetur*.

76. *sortes* : ' *Oracula seu responsa sive syngrapha, in quibus responsa inscripta continebantur*.' Froben, *Thesaur. ling. lat.* iii. 722, (Hagenmeyer, *G.F.* xxii. 8, note 41).

90-3. *omnipotens est nomen eius . . . metuenda* : Gen. xvii. 1 ; Exod. xx. 11 ; 1 Reg. viii. 39, 40 ; Ps. xi. 4, cxxx. 4 (Authorized Version).

## CHAPTER XXIII. Page 54

3. *castrum* : the fort on the south side of Antioch (c. xx), the citadel.

*Nos autem* : the Anonymous, with the army of Bohemund.

7. *angusta porta* : this must have been a gate in the southern wall, either the Iron Gate, or a smaller gate near it. The



fight took place near the citadel (Hagenmeyer, *G.F.* xxiii, 1, note 6).

9. *quinta feria*: June 10, 1098. On the following day Arvedus Tudebodus, the chronicler's brother, was killed (cf. note, c. xxx, '62. *Introd.* p. xi, note 2).

10-11. *Wilhelmus de Grentemaisnil et Albericus frater eius*: the name *Grentemaisnil*, *Grantmesnil*, *Granduna*; *Grandis mainil* (R. of Agiles), *Grande masneda* (*Hist. belli sacri*), *Grente mesnil* (*Chans. d'Ant.*), is derived from *Grandmesnil* in Normandy, near Lisieux. These two brothers were the younger sons of Hugh, baron, sheriff of Leicestershire, &c., an Anglo-Norman feudatory who with his brother Robert was the second founder and restorer of the Norman monastery of St. Evroul. William of Grantmesnil married Robert Guiscard's daughter Mabel; thus he was Bohemund's brother-in-law. In the *Chans. d'Ant.* (Ch. iii. xxii) Baldwin puts him in charge of Tarsus in Cilicia. He covered himself with shame by his flight from Antioch, with Alberic, and, according to Tudebod and other sources, with another brother, Ivo or Ives. Alberic and Ivo had taken part in the rebellion of Robert of Normandy against his father in 1077. Ivo inherited the family estates in England. He seems to have died on pilgrimage (Hagenmeyer (*op. cit.*), Le Prévost (*op. cit.*), *Chans. d'Ant.*, *Dict. Nat. Biog.* (Hugh), xxviii. 159).

11. *Wido Trursellus* [*Trossellus*, *Trussellus*, *Guido Rubeus* (R. of Caen)]: Lord of Montlhéry (Dép. Seine et Oise). He is said to have held the office of seneschal of France and to have forfeited it by his flight from Antioch (*Rec. Hist. des Crois.*, *Hist. occ.* iii. 650, note i; iv. 64, note e; 563, note c). Alb. of Aix says that he took part in the Crusade of 1101.

11-12. *Lambertus Pauper*: Le Prévost (Ord. Vit. iii. 545, note 3) identifies this Lambert with Lambert Count of Clermont near Liège, who is said to have returned to Europe with Peter the Hermit and to have been one of the founders of the house of Augustinian canons at Neumoustier, near Huy, in the Liège diocese, where the Hermit is supposed, on somewhat doubtful authority, to have ended his days. Paulin Paris doubts this identification, and Hagenmeyer shows the inadequacy of the evidence both for the identification and for the whole story of the connexion of the Hermit with the Count of Clermont, though he is inclined to think that Peter may have ended as an inmate of Neumoustier (Hagenmeyer, *P. der Eremit*, 28, 282, 296, 364; Cf. *Chans. d'Ant.* ii. 353).

14. *demissi sunt per murum*: *Funambuli* ('rope-dancers') *vocati sunt* (Ord. Vit. iii. 545-6). Cf. Gibbon, *Dec. and Fall*, c. lviii: 'the opprobrious epithet of the rope-dancers was



applied to the deserters who dropt in the night from the walls of Antioch.'

16. *Multique alii fugerunt*: MS. C adds *Wilhemus de Sichys*: MSS. A, H, (cf. p. 145), mention *Guillermus de Archis*. Other names are given by Tudebod, the *Hist. belli sacri*, R. of Caen, &c. Alb. of Aix includes William the Carpenter.

17. *ad naues*: the Greek and western ships at the Port of St. Simeon.

27-8. *murum inter nos et illos*: this wall was on the north-west of the city in the valley between the citadel and the hill on which Bohemund had planted his standard (cf. c. xx).

#### CHAPTER XXIII. Page 55

2. *castellum*: the citadel.

3. *quidam sacerdos*: Tudebod calls him *Stephanus*, R. of Agiles: *Stephanus, cognomine Valenti, Stephanus Valentinus*. He is said by R. of Agiles to have seen Adhémar of Le Puy in a vision, during the siege of Arca.

5. *ecclesia S. Mariae*: this church, which is described by Fulcher of Chartres as round, *forma rotunda*, is said to have been built by Justinian. During the Turkish rule in Antioch, it was the only church which remained to the Christians.

9. *integra crux*: a cross complete in all its parts. R. of Agiles gives these visions in great detail.

27. *domum meam*: the church of St. Peter, the largest and most important Christian church in Antioch stood on a hill, in the southern quarter. The Turks turned it into a mosque. Cf. R. of Agiles (R iii. 258, D): *quam antea Sarraceni Mahu mariam fecerunt*. B. of Dol says that Urban II specially mentioned this church in his address at Clermont. When the Franks took the city the church of St. Peter was rededicated to Christian worship.

33. *Congregati sunt*: the editors of the *Recueil* refer to *Processionale Rothomagensis, sub rubrica: In tempore belli*. Cf. R. of Agiles (R iii. 256), where Christ bids Stephen Valentinus tell the bishop of Le Puy that when the people go into battle they are to say: *Congregati sunt inimici nostri, et gloriantur in virtute sua; contere fortitudinem illorum, Domine, et disperge illos: ut cognoscant quia non est alius qui pugnet pro nobis, nisi tu Deus noster*. (Cf. Num. x. 35; Ps. lxxviii. 2, cxliv. 6; 1 Reg. viii. 60; Ecclus. xxxvi. 5; Exod. xiv. 14, 25; Deut. i. 30; Jos. x. 14, xxiii. 3.) The *versus* is the doxology: *Gloria Patri, &c.*

45. *Tancredus . . . iuravit*: R. of Agiles makes the princes swear: *quod de Antiochia non fugerent neque egrederentur nisi de communi consilio omnium*. He says that the people were much comforted by this oath, for they thought that the princes wanted to fly to the port.



## CHAPTER XXV. Page 57

2. *Petrus*: R. of Agiles, the fullest authority for the Invention of the Holy Lance, of which he was an eye-witness, gives this visionary the name of Peter Bartholomew (*Petrus Bartholomeus*). Ord. Vit. and others call him *Abraham*. He was a Provençal, not a priest, but the servant of a wealthier pilgrim. R. of Agiles describes him as *pauper quidam rusticus*, a peasant, illiterate and ignorant. He was afraid at first to reveal his visions lest it should be supposed that he was inventing them to get food from the bishop of Le Puy and the Count of Toulouse. For his ordeal and death, cf. R. of Agiles (R iii. 168 seq.) and F. of Chartres.

7. *lanceam Salvatoris nostri: lancea dominica, qua Salvatoris nostri latus Longini manibus perforatum fuit* (*Ep. prin. ad Urban*: F. of Chartres, R iii. 351). There was an early tradition that the lance preserved in St. Peter's Church was the lance of St. Mercurius, not the Holy Lance of Longinus (cf. Röhrich, *Gesch. des ersten Kreuzz.*, 141, note 1; *Romania*, ix. 34, note 1; xix. 564, note 1). [Cf. *Introd.*, pp. xv, xxviii.]

## CHAPTER XXVI. Page 58

1. *castello*: the citadel.

11. *Illi vero*: either the three knights, all of whom are killed in the corresponding passages in the *Chans. d'Ant.* (Chh. vii, xxi), and in *Rob. the Monk* (R iii. 824), or, more probably, the two Turks.

12. *Hugo li Forcenez*: Bongars has *Hugo Cli Forcenez*, probably a printer's or copyist's error, but significant as showing that his MSS. may have been corrupt, and that his printed text is not infallible. Hagenmeyer and the *Recueil* use the form adopted in the text of this edition. MS. C reads *hugo visanus*. Hagenmeyer gives the reading *insanus* from MS. A (cf. p. 145). Mr. W. H. Stevenson has pointed out to me that the O.Fr. participle *forsenes* means insane, out of one's senses. Cf. mod. Fr. *forcené*. Tudebod gives the name as *lo Forsenet*, *lo Forsennet*, the *Hist. belli sacri* as *Forsonaea*. The *Chans. d'Ant.* and *Rob. the Monk* mention the incident, but omit Hugh's name. He was apparently an Italian, a follower of Godfrey of Monte Scabioso. Thus it falls to the Italian Anonymous to preserve the name of a brave compatriot. This episode does not seem to be identical, as von Sybel thought, with the attack on a tower by thirty Turks, described by R. of Agiles (R iii. 258, E). (Cf. Hagenmeyer, *G. F.* xxvi, 1, notes 8, 9.)

12-13. *Gosfredi de Monte Scaioso*: *Monte Scabioso*, cc. iv, ix. He fell at the battle of Dorylaeum.

18. *Cassiani palatium*: the situation of this palace is uncertain. It may have been the *palatium imperatoris*, north of



the citadel. It was subsequently granted to Raymond of Toulouse.

20-1. *portam comitis S. Aegidii*: the Bridge Gate or the Dog Gate (Hagenmeyer, *G.F.* xxvi. 2, note 15). The Bridge Gate was opposite *Machumaria*, the fort of R. of Toulouse.

21. *portam ducis Godefridi*: the 'Duke's Gate' in the north wall, east of the Bridge Gate, and between the Bridge Gate and the Dog Gate.

25-6. *pro . . . ecclesiis*: Bongars, and the *Recueil* following Bongars and *E*, read *pro aliis ecclesiis*. Hagenmeyer inserts *ecclesia Sancti Petri et Sanctae Mariae* between *pro* and *aliis*, from MSS. *A* (San Lorenzo del Escorial, late 12th cent.) and *B* (Bibl. Nat. Madrid, late 13th cent. to early 14th cent.). This emendation has been adopted in the text, as it seems necessary to explain the *aliis ecclesiis* in the passage. Tudebod (*codd. B, E*) has: *timens quod ecclesia Sancti Petri, et ecclesia Sanctae Mariae arderent*. (Cf. *Hist. belli sacri*, Rob. the Monk., Guib. of Nogent, *ad loc.*) MS. *C* of the *Gesta* omits the whole passage from *Boamundus* to *ecclesiis*.

33-4. *habebat aquam*: *aquam*, which is needed to complete the sense, is here inserted from Tudebod, followed by Hagenmeyer.

36. *machinas*: *fecerunt . . . contra hostes murum calceum et propugnacula*; *et munierunt haec multis petrariis* (R. of Agiles R iii. 259, D).

43. *Boamundi portam*: the Gate of St. Paul, or East Gate (cf. cc. xii, xvii).

49-50. *Sanctae Christianitatis*: Bongars' text here reads *Dei et sanctae Trinitatis*. The emendation *Sanctae Christianitatis* appears to be justified. Tudebod, in the corresponding passage, has *sanctae Christianitatis inimicis*, and in c. x the Anonymous calls the Turks *inimici Dei et sanctae Christianitatis*. Hagenmeyer adopts this reading, which is also found in the *Hist. belli sacri*, but he omits *sanctae* (*G.F.* xxxvi, 4, note 29).

58. *cardui*: thistles.

## CHAPTER XXVII. Page 60

1. *Imprudens . . . Stephanus*: for Stephen, Count of Blois and Chartres, cf. c. viii. The epithet *imprudens* is applied by William of Malmesbury to his son, King Stephen of England. He returned to the Holy Land in 1101 and was killed fighting against the Saracens in 1102. The western chroniclers who wrote after he had retrieved his reputation by a glorious death judge him less unfavourably than his immediate contemporaries.

3. *ductor nostrorum*: *caput nostrorum* (Tud.): *quem . . . pro*



*dictatore alii principes elegerant* (R. of Agiles). In Stephen's second letter to his wife he writes : *Nam cuncti principes nostri communi consilio totius exercitus me dominum suum atque omnium suorum actuum provisorem atque gubernatorem, etiam me nolente usque ad tempus constituerunt.*

5. *Alexandreta* : *Alexandriola* (R. of Caen), *Alexandria minor* (Alb. of Aix, W. of Tyre), *Iscanderum* (Abulfeda), lies north of Antioch near the bay of the same name. It had been fortified and is therefore called *castrum* by the Anonymous. Alb. of Aix says that Tancred destroyed its walls and gates in his first Cilician expedition.

10 *proximam montaneam* : one of the heights of the Amanus range (Hagenmeyer, *G. F.* xxvii. 1, note 7).

15. *Philomenam* : Alb. of Aix says that Stephen took ship from Alexandretta and landed on a Greek island. Here he heard that Alexius and his army had arrived at Finiminis, where he joined them. Philomena is Philomelium, now Akshehr, in Phrygia, between Dorylaeum and Iconium. R. of Caen puts the meeting at Cuthai, the modern Kiuthahia, south-west of Dorylaeum. For the interview cf. Hagenmeyer, *G. F.* xxvii, notes ; Chalandon, *Alex. Comnène*, p. 203 ; von Sybel, *op. cit.*

21. *ducis* : here in MSS. *A*, *C*, *H* is inserted a passage (cf. p. 61, foot-notes) describing how one of the 'rope-dancers', William de Archis (cf. note, c. xxiii. 16), told the Emperor that Bohemund had sworn that if Alexius came to Antioch he should lose his head. From this Hagenmeyer infers the comparatively late date of this group of MSS. The passage, he argues, belongs to a period when the hostility between Bohemund and Alexius had become marked, from 1105 to 1108, or later. William de Archis is spoken of as having been a knight, but as being now a monk. (Hagenmeyer, *G. F.* xxvii. 2, note 13 ; *Einkl.* § 7.)

22. *Widonem fratrem Boamundi* : *Wido*, *Guido*, or *Guy* was Bohemund's step-brother, son of Robert Guiscard and of his second wife Sigelgaita. In the romances he plays a more prominent part than in sober history. (Cf. *Chans. d'Ant.* and *Cheval. au Cygne.*)

58. *semicano* : *semicanus*, half-grey, grizzled.

65. *cum venerint Turci* : 'craignant, et c'est là qu'apparaît son entière bonne foi en cette circonstance, que les Turks ne missent à profit leur victoire pour pénétrer en Asie Mineure, Comnène ordonna de ravager tout le pays . . . afin que l'ennemi ne trouvât aucune ressource s'il pénétrait sur le territoire grec' (Chalandon, *op. cit.*, p. 203). Anna Comnena says that the Emperor feared the advance of the Turks on Constantinople, and that a Turkish army under the son of the Sultan of Persia was actually marching against the Greek troops.



## CHAPTER XXVIII. Page 63

1-3. *Nos . . . peruenimus* : the Anonymous was apparently in the church of St. Peter at the time of the Invention of the Holy Lance, though he was not one of the thirteen diggers of whom he speaks.

4-5. *tredecim homines* : R. of Agiles and Tudebod say that there were twelve men. R. of Agiles specially mentions the presence of the Bishop of Orange (*Aurasicensis*), Count Raymond of Toulouse and his chaplain, Pontius de Baladuno, and Faraldus de Tornaiz.

12. *seculo eloquio* : bold, decided speech.

16. *Herluinum : dragomandus Petri* (Tudebod). He knew two languages, Arabic and Provençal, according to Hagenmeyer, and acted as interpreter for Peter the Hermit on the mission to Kerboga which had been decided on in the Council of the Princes.

26-8. *effici Christiani . . . Christianos afficiatis ?* Hagenmeyer (*G. F.* xxviii. 3, note 16), takes *afficere* in this passage to mean 'to benefit', and regards it as intended to heighten the ironic effect of the question. It seems more likely that *effici* and *afficiatis* are in apposition, and that *afficere* is used in the sense of 'to injure'.

42. *effeminatis gentibus* : the Greeks were regarded as effeminate by the western peoples as well as by the Turks. W. of Tyre (xv. 3), speaks of them as *effeminati Graecorum populi* (Hagenmeyer, *G. F.* xxviii. 4, note 23).

## CHAPTER XXIX. Page 65

5-6. *sex acies* : this chapter describes the great battle with Kerboga of June 28, 1098. The number of the divisions, *acies*, or *turmae*, their order, leaders, &c., vary considerably in the different chronicles ; though there is substantial agreement, they differ in details. The Anonymous and his plagiarists give a vivid picture of the action, which should be compared with the corresponding passages of R. of Agiles. Of modern writers, Sir Charles Oman (*Art of War*, vol. i, Bk. v, c. iii, p. 282 seq., Plates vii, viii) has given a valuable account of the battle from the military point of view, von Sybel and Röhricht (*opp. cit.*) may also be consulted. Hagenmeyer has very full notes on this subject.

11. *portans . . . lanceam* : Raymond of Agiles actually bore the Holy Lance. *Vidi ego haec quae loquor*, he writes, *et Dominicam lanceam ibi ferebam*. Ordericus Vitalis makes Peter Bartholomew the Lance-bearer.

12. *cum exercitu Raimundi comitis* : Raymond of Toulouse himself remained at Antioch with 200 men, to watch the



Turkish garrison of the citadel, as he was too ill (*valde infirmabatur*, R. of Agiles) for more active service.

23-4. *portam quae est ante Machomariam*: the Bridge Gate. This passage shows that the Anonymous was a layman and a soldier. (Hagenmeyer, G.F. xxix. 2, note 13.)

29. *suo ammiralio* [*amiralio*, Ha]: the name of this emir is not mentioned by the Anonymous, but Hagenmeyer is inclined to identify him with *Gelis Arslan*, *Gersaslan* in Fulcher's list of emirs (F. of Chartres, R iii. 347), with the *Roseleon* mentioned by Albert of Aix, and with the *Rouge-Lion* (*Rouges lions*) of the *Chans. d'Ant* (ii. 361). *Rouge-Lion* corresponds to the Turkish name *Kizil-Arslān* (red lion), which is probably represented by Fulcher's *Gelis Arslan*. In the *Chans. d'Ant*. *Rouge-Lion* plays at chess with Kerboga just before the battle. This incident, without the name of Kerboga's partner, is found in R. of Agiles, in F. of Chartres, and in R. of Caen. (Introd. p. xxix, note 1).

33-4. *montaneam*: the range lying to the north of the Bridge Gate.

39. *Reinaldus*: W. of Tyre, following Albert of Aix, connects this Reinaldus with a certain Reinaldus of Tul (Toul), a follower of G. of Bouillon, who had taken part in the siege of Nicaea, and in Baldwin's expedition to Tarsus.

50-2. *Sancti Georgius, Mercurius et Demetrius*: for *St. George* cf. cc. ii, xxxvi. R. of Agiles (R iii. 290) mentions a later appearance of St. George to the priest Desiderius. He is also said to have appeared, with SS. Demetrius and Theodore at the battle of Dorylaeum. *St. Mercurius*, another soldier saint, was, if his legend may be believed, a Scythian, and the leader of the army of the Emperor Decius in the Persian war. He refused to worship false gods and was tortured, but an angel healed him. He was eventually put to death as a Christian. *St. Demetrius*, a native of Thessalonica and pro-consul of Achaia, was martyred under the Emperor Maximianus. The element of the marvellous enters also into his legend. The *Chans. d'Ant*. and Robert the Monk add to these three *St. Maurice*, the Christian hero of the Theban legion, 'qu'on tint por bon guerrier' (*Chans. d'Ant.*, Chh. viii, li).

54-5. *miserunt ignem in herbam*: R. of Agiles (R iii. 260) mentions the firing of the dry grass, but says that it was done that the Franks *qui gladios non formidabant, saltem ab igne corriperentur*.

57. *honorabilia spolia: onerabilia*; 'portable.'

71-2. *castellum Tancredi*: probably the fort at Harenc (cf. c. xvii).

81-2. *qui castellum custodiebat: castrum . . . admiratus quidam, qui in eo erat cum mille hominibus, Boamundo se reddidit* (*Ep. ad. Urban*, F. of Chartres, R iii. 351 G).

99. *baptizatus est ammiralius*: his conversion is mentioned



in the letter of the Princes to Urban II (cf. B. of Dol and R. the Monk). For this emir, cf. cc. xxi, xxii.

102. *terram*: the *Hist. belli sacri* says that Kerboga's tent was sent by sea to the church of St. Nicholas, at Bari, *ut laetaretur omnis Christiana plebs de triumpho, quem dedit populo suo Dominus super paganorum gentem*. (Hagenmeyer, *G.F.* xxix. 12, note 56.)

#### CHAPTER XXX. Page 69

1-2. (*Deo . . . grates*): Bongars puts the second bracket after *referimus*, instead of after *grates*: another instance of careless printing.

11. *Hugonem Magnum*: he was charged to offer the Emperor the lordship of Antioch if he would fulfil his engagements to the Crusaders, make war on the Turks, and take the field in person (von Sybel, *op. cit.*, p. 376). With Hugh went Baldwin of Hainault (*de Monte*, cf. cc. ii, x).

13. *nec postea rediit*: Hugh eventually returned to France, but Baldwin of Hainault appears to have been either killed or taken prisoner in a skirmish with the Turks near Nicaea, on his way to Constantinople.

18. *Inuentum est in concilio*: Bongars has *Inuentum in*: the *est* has been supplied from *ER* and *Ha*.

29. *Raimundus Pileus*: Albert of Aix makes this Provençal Raymond one of the besiegers of Nicaea and a notable leader in the battle with Kerboga. Cf. *Chans. d'Ant.* ii. 358. R. of Agiles calls him *miles nobilissimus et fortis* and notes his presence at the ordeal of Peter Bartholomew, when he rescued Peter from the excited populace (R iii. 284). Cf. c. xxxvii (cf. Vaissète, *Hist. du Languedoc*, ii).

33. *Talamanis*: Tell-mannas, inhabited by Christian Syrians (*Rec., Hist. occ.* iv. 451).

46. *Marra*: Ma'arat en Nu'mān, on the caravan route from Aleppo to Emesa, two days' journey south of Aleppo. Cf. notes, c. xxxiii (Hagenmeyer, *G.F.* xxx. 7, note 25).

56. *castrum*: Tell-mannas.

58-60. *viam carpere . . . victoria . . . ministrabat*: possible echoes of Virgil (cf. *Aen.* vi. 629, xi. 71, *Georg.* iii. 215 seq.; Hagenmeyer, *G.F.*, *Einleit.* p. 38).

62. *congregati fuerant*: Tudebod adds: *quidam optimus miles Arnaldus scilicet Tudebovis interfectus est*. This may have been his brother. (Cf. note c. xxiii. 9. *Introd.* p. xi. note 2).

67-8. *Podiensis episcopus*: he died, possibly of a pestilence which was raging in Antioch, on August 1, 1098, and was buried in the Church of St. Peter, according to Albert of Aix and Guib. of Nogent, on the spot where the Holy Lance had been found. R. of Caen gives his epitaph (c. 95). But in life



he had doubted the genuineness of the Holy Lance, and Raymond of Agiles (R iii. 278) relates how he appeared after death to Peter Bartholomew and told him that for this scepticism he had suffered scourging and burning in hell. When his unifying influence was withdrawn, the dissensions among the princes became painfully apparent. For his relations with the future patriarch Arnulf cf. c. xxxix (cf. note, c. iii. 2-3).

## CHAPTER XXXI. Page 72

4. *Albara* [*Albaria* (c. xxxiii); *Barra* (R. of Agiles, R iii. 266)]: the modern *Kefr el Bara*, two days' journey to the south-east of Antioch, in the mountainous region east of the Orontes.

12. *oracula*: here *oraculum* stands for a temple, a place in which to pray.

13. *sapientissimum virum*: Peter of Narbonne was chosen to be bishop of Antioch. Bishop Adhémar, in the narrative of Raymond of Agiles, appeared to Peter Bartholomew and told him that the Count of Toulouse must choose a bishop in his place. This was done at Barra (Albara). The Count took counsel with the princes and clergy and then called the people together and Peter of Narbonne was chosen. The Count granted him half the city of Antioch and its territory (R. of Agiles, R iii. 301). The bishop accompanied the Crusading host to Jerusalem (cf. c. xxxviii).

17-18. *regressi sunt . . . maiores*: R. of Agiles says that after the death of Adhémar, *Boamundus in Romaniam est regressus, et dux Lotharingiae versus Roais profectus est*. By All Saints Day 1098 they were once more gathered together in Antioch.

26. *peierare*: the Count was afraid of perjuring himself by breaking his oath to the Emperor.

34. *cathedra*: here the special place in the Church in which stood the chair or throne of St. Peter, who was reputed to have been bishop of Antioch (Hagenmeyer, *G.F.* xxi. 4, note 17). The bishops and magnates held their meeting in the church, a common medieval practice.

37-9. *Priusquam . . . voluerit*: Hagenmeyer explains this to mean: 'if we wait till Bohemund is willing to come with us, we shall never get to Jerusalem.' Raymond of Agiles gives an interesting account of the discussion in the church of St. Peter and of the impatience of the 'people' (*populus*) at the delay caused by the selfishness and ambition of the leaders. *Nos autem*, they said, *Christo pro quo venimus duce, iter nostrum aggrediamur* (R iii. 267).

39. *pares*: the use of this word for the *seniores* should be noted. The Count of Toulouse would submit to the judgement of his peers, saving his fealty to the Emperor.

45-6. *castrum de alta montanea*: while Bohemund fortified



the citadel, his rival Raymond of Toulouse fortified the palace of Yagi Sian and the tower over the Bridge Gate. The question of the lordship of Antioch was in suspense, and, as Raymond of Agiles says, 'discordant peace' was made between Bohemund and the Count.

48-9. *portam pontis*: here Hagenmeyer and the *Recueil* insert: *qui est ex parte Portus Sancti Simeonis*. Cf. foot-note p. 74, 49.

#### CHAPTER XXXII. Page 74

Margin: *Situs urbis Antiochiae*. This marginal note in Bongars' text is probably due to a copyist rather than to the Anonymous himself. Hagenmeyer thinks that this whole chapter was inserted, out of its due place, when the Anonymous revised his book late in the year 1099 (*G.F.*, *Einleit*, p. 20; cf. notes, c. xii).

2-3. *quatuor montaneae*: spurs of the Mt. Casius range. Abulfeda says that the city is built on seven hills.

7. *monasteria*: Hagenmeyer suggests that among the 360 'monasteries' were counted cells and mountain hermitages. Other writers mention 40 or 60 monasteries.

9-10. *duobus muris*: for Justinian's wonderful walls, with their towers and defences, cf. c. xx, note 7-8, p. 120, and references. There are good descriptions in Oman, *Art of War*, and in Hagenmeyer, *G.F.* xxxii. 2, notes, 9, 10. As the fortifications 'may have enclosed an area of some four square miles' (Archer and Kingsford, *Crusades*, p. 65), and as 'no one could walk for a quarter of a mile along the enceinte without passing through six or seven towers' (Oman, *op. cit.*), there was practically a chain of small castles encircling the city.

15. *Farfar*: the Orontes.

18. *septuaginta quinque reges*: Tudebod attempts to give their names. Seleucus Nicator founded the city about 300 B.C. He is said to have called it after his father Antiochus.

20-1. *octo menses et unum diem*: October 21, 1097 to June 3, 1098. Perhaps the month is reckoned as twenty-eight days, or four weeks, as Hagenmeyer suggests.

22. *tres hebdomadas*: Tudebod says that Kerboga besieged the city for twenty-six days.

#### CHAPTER XXXIII. Page 75

4. *Rugia* [*Roia* (R. of Agiles), *Rubea* (Tudebod)]: Riha. It lies between Antioch and Marra, in the mountains to the east of the Orontes (cf. c. xi).

10. *comites*: the Counts of Toulouse and Flanders (R. of Agiles); Albert of Aix adds Godfrey and Eustace of Boulogne and Robert of Normandy.



13. *scalae*: *secunda die . . . si quatuor scalas plus habuissemus, capta esset civitas* (R. of Agiles).

17. *lignum castrum*: Robert the Monk (Lib. VIII, c. ii) describes this siege-tower very carefully. It had threestoreys: in the two upper ones were soldiers fully equipped and armed; in the lowest one were armed men who worked the wheels on which the tower ran. Others had to bring up a shelter, penthouse, or *testudo*, and to fill in the fosse or ditch, that the tower might be wheeled near to the wall (cf. Oman, *op. cit.*, vol. i, Bk. iii, c. vi).

20. *Euardus venator*: *venator quidam, nomine Euardus, qui spiritu buccinandi erat praeditus. Nam sono tumultuosae voces et adversarios exterrebat, et suos ad bella incitabat* (R. the Monk, Lib. VIII, c. ii). Robert the Monk should be read for the siege of Marra and also R. of Agiles.

23-4. *instrumentum*: apparently a mangon, *funda*, or sling, worked by torsion, rather than a *balista*, catapult, or 'magnified crossbow', worked by tension, but the various terms for these machines are used almost indiscriminately by medieval writers (Oman, *op. cit.*, vol. i, Bk. iii, c. vi, vol. ii, Bk. vii, c. iii).

26. *Graecos ignes*: *Ignis cum oleo et adipe mixtus* (F. of Chartres). 'A semi-liquid substance, composed of sulphur, pitch, dissolved nitre, and petroleum boiled together and mixed with certain less important and more obscure substances' (Oman, *op. cit.*, vol. ii, pp. 46-8). Known to the Byzantine Greeks from the seventh century, it played a great part in Crusading warfare (cf. Oman, *op. cit.*: Joinville, *Hist. de St. Louis*, c. xliii).

29-30. *superiori solarium*: the *solarium* or 'sun-room' was generally an upper chamber in a house. Here the word is used for the top storey of the siege-tower, which was higher than the town wall.

30. *Wilhelmus de Monte Pislerio*: cf. c. xi. *Guillelmus de Monte Pislerio (alias Pessulano) ipse fuit cum multis aliis in superiori solarium* (R. the Monk, Lib. VIII, c. ii).

43-4. *Gulferius de Daturre* [*Golferius de Turribus* (R. of Agiles), *Gulferius de la Turre* (R. the Monk)]: Lord of the castle of Lasturs in the Limousin. His local name is given as *Dasturs*, *Lasturs* in the *Hist. belli sacri*. In the army of Raymond of Toulouse at Antioch, he took part in the Tell-mannas expedition (c. xxx). Legend gives him a 'faithful lion', which he saved from a snake. It followed him like a dog, and when, on his return home, the sailors refused to take it on board ship, it swam after its master and was drowned. (Hagenmeyer, *G.F.* xxxiii. 5, note 25; Le Prévost, *Ord. Vit.* iii. 580; von Sybel, *op. cit.*, 387; Vaissète, *Hist. du Languedoc*, ii.)

46. *supra murum*: the text here follows the editors of the



*Recueil* and Hagenmeyer in inserting from *B, C, E, &c.*, the sentence: *illi autem, qui ascendebant, expediebant circa illos murum*. It may well be original, but the passage in Bongars' text is complete without it. It means 'they cleared the wall (from enemies) about them'. Tudebod has: *Golferius vero, quum fuit supra murum, cepit cum illis pugnare cum lancea occidendo*. (Cf. Hagenmeyer, *G.F.* xxxiii. 5, note 26.)

56-7. *foderunt murum urbis*: R. of Agiles (R iii. 269, H) says that the Turks in the town threw at the Franks stones and darts, fire, logs of wood, beehives full of bees, and lime.

78. *unum mensem et quatuor dies*: December 11, 1098 to January 13, 1099.

79. *Oriensis episcopus*: William, bishop of Orange. He was present at the Councils of Piacenza and Clermont, was sent by the Pope on a crusading mission to Genoa and then joined the Provençal army. It was he who gathered the people together in the siege of Marra, and exhorted them to piety and perseverance.

#### CHAPTER XXXIIII. Page 78

17. *honestare*: Raymond of Toulouse ordered his knights at Antioch to put the palace and the tower over the Bridge Gate into a good state of defence. *Honestare* here means to equip, to prepare for war.

21. *Capharda*: *Kafartab, Kefrtab*, near Marra, on the road from Aleppo to Hamah, had been conquered by Yagi Sian and his allies in 1096. It is called *castrum* or *oppidum* by the chroniclers, and Raymond of Toulouse had already occupied and garrisoned it, in the plunder-raid which he made from Marra early in January 1099.

23. *Rex . . . Caesareae*: the emir Ibn Moncad (Kamāl ad-dīn, Ibn el-Athir). Caesarea on the Farfar, called *Larissa ad Orontem* in the old itineraries (Hagenmeyer, *G.F.* xxxiv. 5, note 22), is the *Sheyzar, Scheizar, Chezar* of the Arabs, 'the rocky fortress of Sheyzar, the ruins of which still overhang the Orontes'. (Stanley Lane-Poole, *Saladin*, p. 28 seq.) Osama (Ousâma, Usâma), the Arab writer, was its prince in the twelfth century (cf. Derenbourg, *Ousâma ibn Mounkidh*).

49. *Kephaliām*: the ancient Raphania, Rafinia (Kamāl ad-dīn), between Apamea and Tripolis; *oppidum extra Libanum montem situm* (F. of Chartres, R iii. 479).

54. *montaneam*: the Ansariya or Ansarieh Mountains, north of Lebanon.

*vallem de Sem*: Bongars' text has *de Lem* in this passage, *Desem* in c. xxxv. Hagenmeyer reads *Desem* in both cases, but fails to explain the form. The *Recueil* editors read *de Sem* and *Desem*. This probably represents the original reading,



for Tudebod (*codd. B, E*) has *vallem de Issem*. Bongars' *de Lem* is an obvious scribal error. It is possible that this name is connected with *Hiṣn el-Akrād*, the famous 'Kurds' Castle', known later as Crac des Chevaliers. This fortress lies at the end of the El Bukeia plain, which appears to be the *vallem* of the text, where it opens out to the sea (Stanley Lane-Poole, *op. cit.*, pp. 27, 246; Hagenmeyer, *G.F.* xxxiv. 9, note 36). It is more probable, as has been suggested to me, that *de Sem* and *Desem* represent the Syriac *d' šēm* = Arabic *shēm*, Syria, Damascus. The *castrum*, in which 'a great multitude of heathen' had gathered, was perhaps an early castle on the site of Crac des Chevaliers.

68-9. *Camela ciuitate* [*Emesa, Emissa* (W. of Tyre), *Hims, Homs, La Chamelle* (Joinville)]: lies between Aleppo and Damascus.

69. *Rex . . . illius*: Jenah ed-daula, an ally of Kerboga, who had been present at the blockade of Antioch by the Turks. F. of Chartres calls this emir *Ginahadoles*.

71-2. *Rex . . . Tripolis*: the Kadi Abu Ali Ibn Amar (cf. Abulfeda) Jemal-almolk Abulhassan Ali ibn Amar (Ibn el-Athir). R. of Agiles attributes these embassies from the emirs to the taking of the *castrum*; *terruerat enim totam regionem illam castelli oppugnatio, quoniam nunquam antea ab aliquibus potuit expugnari* (R iii. 275, B). The modern name for Tripolis is Tarābulus. It was a flourishing Mediterranean port, situated in a fertile plain and surrounded by the sea on three sides. In the wars between Fatimites and Seljuk Turks it had become almost independent.

78. *Archae* [*Arca, Arka*]: cf. F. of Chartres, (R iii. 353); *castrum Archas ad radicem montis Libani situm, quod condidit Aracaeus (ut legitur Gen. x. 17) Chanaan filius, nepos Noe*. R. of Agiles describes it as *munitissimum et inexpugnabile viribus humanis*. It was north of Tripolis, about four leagues distant, according to R. of Agiles.

91-2. *Raimundus . . . de Tentoria: de Taurina*, p. 86; R. de Torena (Tud.), who guarded the fort *Machumaria*; R. de Taurina (*Hist. belli sacri*), who went with Raymond Piletus on the Tellmannas expedition. He was a southern Frenchman from Turenne in the Limousin, and a follower of the Count of Toulouse (cf. Le Prévost, *Ord. Vit.* iii. 588).

92-3. *Tortosam ciuitatem*: Tortosa, the ancient Antaradus, the modern Tartus, a small but strongly fortified seaport some forty miles north of Tripolis. While the Crusaders were besieging Arca, Tortosa was a victualling base to which ships from Europe could bring supplies.

104. *Maraclea*: the modern Marakia, on the sea, north of Tortosa.



## CHAPTER XXXV. Page 82

2-3. *Lichiam ciuitatem*: Laodicea, the modern Ladikieh. It had an excellent harbour and easy communications with Cyprus, and it lay in a fertile wine-growing district. At the time of the First Crusade it was the only place left to the Greeks. During the siege of Arca Genoese and Venetian ships brought supplies for the Franks to this port.

5. *Gibellum*: the ancient *Gabala*, now *Jebelli*, south of Laodicea, about half-way between Arca and Antioch. It was under the Kadi Abu Mohamed Obeid Allah (Abulfeda, Ibn el-Athir.). When the army was before Sheyzar Raymond of Toulouse had wanted to take Gibellum, but the opposition of the army in general, and of Tancred in particular, led him to abandon the scheme (von Sybel, *op. cit.*, 392).

14. *ultra flumen*: the Nahr Arka. Arca or Arka was on its northern bank.

16. *contra Tripolim*: Raymond of Agiles (R iii. 285, B) attributes the change in the submissive attitude of the emir of Tripolis and his refusal to pay tribute, to his knowledge of the quarrels among the Christian leaders.

20. *aqua . . . fluebat*: the *Nahr Kadisha* flows near the old town of Tripolis. R. of Agiles here mentions an aqueduct which brought water into the town.

29. *Naues . . . nostrae*: Greek, Venetian, Genoese, and English ships are known to have come to the help of the Crusaders. R. of Agiles has an interesting passage (c. xxxii) on the English ships, which had decreased in number by the spring of 1099 from thirty to nine or ten.

35. *Anselmus de Riboatmont* [*de Ribodi Monte* (Hagenmeyer, *Gesta Franc.* c. xxxv, 3, note 24), *Riberi Monte*, *Ripamondi* (R. of Agiles), *Rilomundo* (*Hist. belli sacri*)]: Ribemont, near St. Quentin (Dép. Aisne). Anselm was Count of Ostrevant and Valenciennes, founder of the religious house of Ribemont, and a great benefactor of the abbey of Anchin. He had played his part at Nicaea and Antioch before he was killed at Arca. The two letters which he wrote from Antioch to Manasses, in French *Manassé* (English *Manasseh*, Vulgate *Manasses*), Archbishop of Rheims, have been preserved (cf. Hagenmeyer; Le Prévost; von Sybel; *Chans. d'Ant.* ii, p. 359; *Rec. Hist. des Crois.*, *Hist. occ.* iii, préf., p. lviii; Riant, *Invent.* 165, 178). About this time Pontius de Baladuno, the friend and fellow-author whom Raymond of Agiles bitterly deplores, was killed by a stone from a *petraria*. Before Arca also Peter Bartholomew went through the ordeal of fire, and died twelve days later.



## CHAPTER XXXVI. Page 84

10. *Ammiralius Babyloniae* : the Emir el-Afdal (cf. cc. xvii, xxxix). He had (R iii. 277) won Jerusalem for the Fatimites by bribery, after Kerboga's defeat. R. of Agiles speaks of an embassy from the King of Babylon to the Franks at Arca, to which they replied, *Quod nisi gratis redderet nobis Ierusalem, Babyloniam calumniaremur ei.*

16. *Bethelon* [*Bethoron* (Tud.)] : the modern Batrûn.

17. *Zebari* [*Gibelon* (Tud.), *Gibellulum castrum* (F. of Chartres), *Gibilot* (Alb. of Aix), *Giobbeil* (Abulfeda)] : the ancient Byblus, the modern Jebeil (Jiblah), on the sea, south of Tripolis.

19. *Braym* : the Nahr Ibrahim, which falls into the sea to the south of Byblus.

20-1. *via nimis angusta* : the pass between Byblus and Berytus.

25. *Baruth* : Berytus, the modern Beirut.

26. *Sagitta* : Sidon, the modern Saida. 'The former metropolis of all the Phoenician towns, and one of the oldest towns of the world' (Hagenmeyer). It was now under Egyptian dominion.

27. *Sur* : Tyre. Tyre was also under the Egyptians. It was a very important commercial centre, and a famous port.

*Acram* [*Acco* (F. of Chartres)] : the ancient Ptolemais, the modern Akka, Acre. The siege of Acre was the central episode of the Third Crusade, and its conquest by the Mamlûks in 1291 marked the end of the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem (cf. R iii. of Agiles (R. 291) for the negotiations of the Crusaders with the emir of Acre).

28. *Cayphas* : the modern Haifa ; a seaport, at the northern foot of Mt. Carmel.

29. *Caesaream* : *Caesarea Turris Stratonis*, to be distinguished from Caecarea Philippi and from Sheyzar (note, c. xxxiii. 23).

31. *Ramola* [*Ramore* (c. xxxix), *Rama*, *Ramleh*] : since the Saracens had evacuated the town the Franks occupied it.

33. *honorabilis ecclesia* : this church seems to have been outside Ramleh, and to have belonged to Lydda, St. George's birthplace, where, according to tradition, he was buried after his martyrdom at Nicomedia (cf. cc. ii, xxix). Ramleh and Lydda were close together, and might easily be confused. Another tradition places the martyrdom of St. George at Lydda.

36-7. *episcopum* : Albert of Aix gives his name, *Robertus*, and W. of Tyre says that he was a Norman from the diocese of Rouen.



## CHAPTER XXXVII. Page 86

3. *feria tertia*: Tuesday, June 7, but *octauo Idus Iunii* would be Monday, June 6. The right date is June 7. Cf. Tudebod (R iii, 102): III. *feria*, VII<sup>o</sup> *die intrante Junio* (cf. F. of Chartres, (R iii, 355); Hagenmeyer, *Chron. de la Prem. Crois.*, pp. 236-7).

4. *eamque mirabiliter obsedimus*: for the siege of Jerusalem, Raymond of Agiles, Albert of Aix, and William of Tyre should be read, in addition to the modern historians. Hagenmeyer's notes on the text are very full and useful, and his *Chronologie de la Première Croisade* is indispensable for the sequence of events. There are good illustrations and a plan of the city in E. Heyck, *Die Kreuzzüge und das heilige Land*.

5-6. *S. Stephani . . . ecclesiam*: this church lay to the north of the city. In 1099 it was in ruins.

10. *in monte Sion*: the Provençal army was at first on the west of the city. It afterwards took up a position on the hill of Sion on the south. The Church of St. Mary on Sion was on this hill (R. of Agiles, R iii. 293; F. of Chartres, R iii. 358).

14. *Arabes*: by 'Arabs' Hagenmeyer here understands Bedouins.

20. *minorem . . . murum*: the comparatively low outer or second wall on the north of the city. The other three sides were defended by a single wall of great height and strength.

27. *navium*: the Genoese ships at Joppa.

29-30. *Syloa . . . fons*: the 'pool of Siloam' was on the eastern slope of Mt. Sion.

35. *Iaphiae [Joppa, Jaffa]*: *nullum enim alium portum habebamus* (F. of Chartres, R iii. 383).

38. *Wilhelmus de Sabra*: Sabran (Dép. Gard). Tudebod (R iii. 50) mentions William as one of the knights who guarded the fort *Machumaria* at Antioch.

41. *ammirauisi*: el-Afdal.

## CHAPTER XXXVIII. Page 88

4. *machinamenta*: cf. Hagenmeyer, *G.F.* xxxviii. 1, note 2.

31. *comes Eustachius*: the first passage in the *Gesta* in which Eustace of Boulogne is mentioned by name.

32. *Letholdus*: he came from Tournai (Albert of Aix). All the copyists of the *Gesta*, with R. of Caen, the *Hist. belli sacri*, and Albert of Aix, make him the first to get over the wall, though the honour is not undisputed (Hagenmeyer, *G.F.* xxxviii. 4, note 18).

35-6. *templum Salomonis*: the modern el Aksa Mosque



on Mt. Moriah on the south of the city : *templum Salomonis magnum est et mirabile* (F. of Chartres).

37. *cauillas* : French *cheville*, ankle.

39. *castellum* : the wooden siege-tower.

50. *Turri David* [*Arx David* (F. of Chartres) ] : the later citadel, on the west of the city. It formed part of the defences of the city wall, and was so strongly fortified that fifteen to twenty men could hold it against all attacks.

*portam* : the West, Joppa, or Bethlehem Gate.

60-1. *Gaston de Beert* : *Béarn* (Tud.), *Gastus de Bederz civitate* (Béziers) (Alb. of Aix).

65. *Sepulcrum* : this was the real goal of the pilgrim-soldiers. For descriptions of the Church of the Holy Sepulchre, cf. F. of Chartres and W. of Tyre, viii. 3. The caliph Hakim had destroyed the older church in A. D. 1000, but it was rebuilt in the first half of the eleventh century, and enlarged by the Crusaders (Hagenmeyer, *G.F.* xxxviii. 7, note 38).

## CHAPTER XXXIX. Page 91

1. Margin : *Godefridus, Rex Electus*. Probably due to a copyist (cf. c. xxxii). It occurs in Bongars' text.

10. *pyrae . . . sicut metae* : funeral pyres like hayricks or stacks, the corpses were heaped up so high.

13. *Scalonam* : the port of Ascalon, the Egyptian door of entry into the Holy Land.

15. *principem ciuitatis* : R. of Agiles (c. xl, R iii. 301) gives a simple straightforward account of Godfrey's election. Some of the clergy wanted a 'spiritual vicar' to be elected first, but the princes disregarded their wishes and proceeded to the election of a king. Raymond of Toulouse was approached : *hortabantur principes comitem Sancti Aegidii, ut acciperet regnum* ; but he refused, saying *nomen regium se perhorrescere in illa civitate*. Godfrey was then unanimously chosen : *elegerunt pariter ducem*. Other authorities mention Robert of Normandy and Robert of Flanders as candidates. Contemporary chroniclers generally call Godfrey *princeps*, *dux*, or *advocatus Sancti Sepulcri*, not, as is usual with later writers, *rex*. Fulcher of Chartres says that he would not be crowned king, and the *Hist. belli sacri* gives the well-known story of his refusal to wear a royal crown where Christ had worn a crown of thorns (cf. E. Barker, *The Crusades*, p. 24 ; Hagenmeyer, *G.F.* xxxix. 3, note 12).

16-17. *patriarcham* : the former patriarch, Simeon, had taken refuge in the island of Cyprus. He died in 1099. Arnulf had been chaplain to Robert of Normandy, and he was also in favour with Odo of Bayeux, who died in Sicily on the way



to the Holy Land. He and the bishop of Martorano were very unpopular with the Provençal party, chiefly because of their scepticism on the subject of the Holy Lance. He seems to have been gifted and eloquent, but to have made many enemies (cf. Dodu, *Royaume de Jérusalem*; Archer and Kingsford, *The Crusades*).

18. *die S. Petri ad Vincula*: August 1, 1099.

20. *Interea nuntius*: here Hagenmeyer collates with the other MSS., the fragment of the *Gesta Francorum*, *M*, which is added to the text of Raymond of Agiles in Bongars' edition (*Gesta Dei per Francos*, i. 182) and in the *Recueil* edition (*Hist. occ.* iii. 305). (Hagenmeyer, *G.F.*, *Einleit.* § 7, p. 96, xxxix. 5, a, p. 482.)

22. *Neopolitanam urbem*: the Shechem or Sichem of the Bible (*Flavia Neapolis*, *Nabulus*, *Nablûs*). Cf. Baudri of Dol (*cod. G*, *Recueil Hist. occ.* iv. 100 seq., 105, note 16) for this expedition to Nablûs.

42. *Marturanensis episcopus*: Arnulf of Martorano (*Matera* in Calabria). R. of Agiles makes him the leader of the party of the patriarch Arnulf and hostile to Provençal interests.

63. *flumen*: the Nahr es Safiye.

91. *stantarum*: a standard. *Stantarum apud nos dicitur vexillum* (Tudebod, R iii. 116).

119-20. *saccum et peram*: cf. Matt. x. 10; Mark vi. 8; Luke ix. 3, x. 4, xxii. 35, 36. (Vulgate and Auth. Vers.) *sine sacculo et pera* (purse and scrip). For *pera*, the pilgrim's scrip or wallet, cf. Ducange, *Gloss.*, *Pera*; *Oxf. Dict.*, *Scrip*.

126. *Machumet . . . numina*: cf. c. xxi.

131. *Vech*! probably derived from Latin *vae*, Greek, οὐαί, German *Weh*, English *woe*. Cf. Latin *vah*! English *ah*! Cf. *vua*, *wa*, Greg. Turon. (Gregory of Tours); *Pat. Lat.* lxxi. 286; H. Omont and G. Collon, *Grégoire de Tours, Hist. des Francs*, Paris, 1913. I owe this reference to the kindness of Dr. R. Lane-Poole.

142. *Reuersi sunt nostri*: for the battle of Ascalon, cf. Oman, *op. cit.*, vol. i, p. 288 seq., Plate IX.

151. *biscocto*: twice-cooked; biscuit.



# BIBLIOGRAPHY

## GENERAL

Good bibliographies for the Crusading movement in general and the First Crusade in particular are given by E. BARKER, *The Crusades*; by L. BRÉHIER, *L'Église et l'Orient au Moyen Age : Les Croisades*; and by MOLINIER, *Sources de l'Histoire de France*, ii, iii. VON SYBEL, *Gesch. des ersten Kreuzzuges*, criticizes the original sources. The publications of the Société de l'Orient Latin—(i) *Archives de l'Orient latin*, 1881, 1884; (ii) *Revue de l'Orient latin*, 1893—contain valuable original, critical, and bibliographical articles and reviews.

There are short general histories of the Crusades by: E. BARKER, *The Crusades* (World's Manuals or Enc. Brit. 1911); L. BRÉHIER, *L'Église et l'Orient au Moyen Age : Les Croisades*: Paris, 1907. ARCHER AND KINGSFORD, *The Crusades* (Story of the Nations); R. RÖHRICHT, *Gesch. der Kreuzz. in Umriß*, 1898; B. KUGLER, *Gesch. der Kreuzz.* (Oncken's Series), new ed. 1891; and A. RUVILLE *Die Kreuzzüge*, Bonn, 1920. Cf. *Camb. Med. Hist.* iv. 1923.

## SPECIAL

### *The First Crusade. I. Original Sources.*

(i) Eyewitnesses. (a) *Anonymi Gesta Francorum et aliorum Hierosolymitanorum*. Manuscripts:

- A. Bibl. S. Laurentii Escorialensis D. III, 11, ff. 1-21.
- B. Madritanus, Bibl. nat. E. e. 103, ff. 149-76,
- C. Cantabrigiensis, Gonvilli et Cai Coll. 188, 6, ff. 111-39.
- D. Vaticanus Reginae Christinae Nr. 641, ff. 1-46.
- E. Vaticanus Reginae Christinae Nr. 572, ff. 1-74.
- F. Cantabrigiensis, Corporis Christi Coll., 281.
- G. ed. Bongars, based on two unidentified MSS.
- H. Codex dom. Ranyard.

*Printed Editions*: 1. BONGARS, *Gesta Dei per Francos*, t. i, pp. 1-29, Hanoviae, 1611. 2. *Recueil des Historiens des Croisades, Historiens occidentaux*, t. iii, pp. 121-63, ed. Ph. Le Bas, with the second title *Tudebodus abbreviatus*, Paris, 1866. 3. H. HAGENMEYER, Heidelberg, 1890. Introduction, notes, chronology, and a useful bibliography. 4. A new edition of the *Gesta*, by L. BRÉHIER, with a French translation, is advertised in the series *Les Classiques de l'Hist. de France au Moyen Age*, ed. Louis Halphen.

(b) *Tudebodi sacerdotis Sivracensis Historia de Hierosolym.*



*itinere*, DUCHESNE, *Hist. Franc. SS.*, iv, pp. 773-815; MIGNE, *Patrologia Latina*, t. clv, pp. 763-820; *Recueil: Hist. occ.*, iii, pp. 1-117.

(c) *Raimundi de Agiles Historia Francorum*, BONGARS, t. i, pp. 139-83; MIGNE, *Pat. Lat.*, t. clv, pp. 591-666; *Recueil: Hist. occ.*, iii, pp. 235-305.

(d) *Fulcherii Carnotensis Gesta Francorum Iherusalem peregrinantium*, BONGARS, t. i, pp. 391 ff.; DUCHESNE, *Hist. Franc. SS.*, t. iv, pp. 816 ff.; MIGNE, *Pat. Lat.*, t. clv, pp. 821-940; HAGENMEYER, Heidelberg, 1913. (References in the notes under R are to the *Recueil*).

(ii) Twelfth-century chroniclers, plagiarists, imitators, borrowers, without first-hand knowledge of the history of the Crusade, though with good opportunities for obtaining information.

(e) *Roberti Remensis monachi Historia Hierosolymitana* (Robert the Monk of Rheims), BONGARS, i. 30-81; MIGNE, *Pat. Lat.* t. clv. 667-758; *Recueil: Hist. occ.* iii. 717-882 (for earlier eds. cf. Hagenmeyer, G. F., *Einleit.*, § 6, p. 79, note 99). Robert may have written after 1118, but the date of his book is uncertain. He was at the Council of Clermont.

(f) *Guiberti Historia quae dicitur Gesta per Francos* (Guibert of Nogent), 1053-1124. Present at Council of Clermont. Abbot of N.D. de Nogent, 1104. BONGARS, i. 467-560; ed. D'ACHÉRY, *Guiberti abbatis S. Mariae Novigenti opera omnia*, Paris, 1650-1; MIGNE, *Pat. Lat.* t. clvi. 675 ff.; *Recueil: Hist. occ.* iv. 115 ff.

(g) *Baldricus Dolensis episc., Historia Hierosolymitana* (Baudri of Dol), Monk and Abbot of Bourgeuil, Archbishop of Dol 1107. Died 1130. Present at Council of Clermont. The full title of his book, which was written in 1108, is: *Historia Ierusalem qualiter Christiani a remotis partibus mundi cum maximo labore eam exquisiverunt, expugnauerunt et tenuerunt*. BONGARS, i. 85 ff.; MIGNE, *Pat. Lat.* t. clxvi. 1057 ff.; *Recueil: Hist. occ.* iv. 1-111.

(h) *Gesta Tancredi in expeditione Hierosolymitana auct. Radulpho Cadomensi*, (Ralph. of Caen). MARTÈNE ET DURAND, *Thesaur. Anecd.* iii. 108-210; MURATORI, *SS. Rer. Ital.* v. 285-333; MIGNE, *Pat. Lat.* t. clv. 489-890; *Recueil: Hist. occ.* iii. 603-716.

(i) *Ekkehardi Uraugiensis Hierosolymita* (Ekkehard of Aura). Monk, Abbot of Aura. Made a pilgrimage to Jerusalem in 1101. MARTÈNE ET DURAND; *Vet. Script. ampliss. collectio*. v. 508 ff.; WAITZ, *Mon. Ger. Hist. Script.* vi, 265 ff.; H. HAGENMEYER, *Ekkehardi Uraugiensis abbatis Hierosolymita*, Tübingen, 1877 (useful notes); *Recueil: Hist. occ.* v. 1 ff., ed. Riant.

(j) *Historia belli sacri* (Anon). MABILLON, *Museum Italicum*, t. i,



pars. ii; Paris, 1687. *Recueil*: Hist. occ. iii. 169 ff. (*Tudebodus imitatus et continuatus*). Written after A.D. 1131.

(k) *Orderici Vitalis Historia ecclesiastica* A.D. 1-1141. (Ordericus Vitalis). DUCHESNE, *Historiae Normannorum Script.*, 319 ff., Paris, 1619; BOUQUET, *Rec. des Historiens des Gaules et de la France*, ix. 10-18, x. 234-6, xi. 221-48, xii. 585-770, Paris, 1757-81; MIGNE *Pat. Lat.* t. clxxxviii; A. LE PRÉVOST and L. DELISLE (*Société de l'Hist. de France*), 5 vols., Paris, 1838-55 (useful notes): compiled 1123-41.

(l) *Willelmi monachi Malmesburiensis de gestis regum Anglorum libri quinque* (Will. of Malmesbury, *The History of the Kings of England*, A.D. 449-1127), Rolls Series, 2 vols. (with *Historiae Novellae*, ed. W. Stubbs, London, 1887-9.

(m) CAFARUS, (1) *Liberatio Orientis*: *Mon. Ger. Hist.* SS. xviii; *Recueil*: Hist. occ. v; (2) *Annales Genuenses*; MURATORI, SS. *Rer. Ital.* vi; *Mon. Ger. Hist.* SS. xviii.

(n) *Historia Gestorum viae nostri temporis Hierosolymitanae*, Lib. i-iii, a FULCONE; Lib. iv-vi, a GILONE; DUCHESNE, *Hist. Franc.* SS. iv (in part); MARTÈNE ET DURAND, *Thesaur. Anecd.* iii. 212 ff.; MIGNE, *Pat. Lat.* t. clv. 943 ff.; *Recueil*: Hist. occ. vi. A poem, in hexameters.

(o) *Alberti Aquensis Historia Hierosolymitana* (Albert of Aix): BONGARS, i. 184 ff.; MIGNE, *Pat. Lat.* t. clxvi. 389 ff.; *Recueil*: Hist. occ. iv. 271 ff.

(p) *Will. Tyrensis archiepiscopi Hist. Rerum in partibus transmarinis gestarum* (William of Tyre): *Recueil*: Hist. occ. i.

(iii) Letters. P. Riant, *Alexii Comneni Rom. imp. ad Robertum I. Flan. comit., ep. spuria*, Genev. 1879; *Inventaire critique des lettres historiques des croisades*, i, ii, Paris, 1880; *Archives de l'Orient latin* (Soc. de l'Or. lat.), i, 1881; HAGENMEYER, *Epistulae et Chartae ad historiam primi belli sacri spectantes*, Innsbruck, 1901; *Epistulae Steph. Carnotensis comitis ad Adelam uxorem*, i, ii, in *Recueil Hist. occ.* iii. 885 ff.; *Epp. Urban. II*, MIGNE, *Pat. Lat.* t. cli.

(iv) Legend. *La Chanson d'Antioche*, ed. Paulin Paris, 2 vols., Paris, 1848; C. HIPPEAU, *La Chanson du Chevalier au Cygne et de G. de Bouillon, etc.*, Paris, 1877; PIGONNEAU, *Le Cycle de la Croisade*, Paris, 1877; J. BÉDIER, *Les Chansons des Croisades*, Paris, 1909; *Les Légendes Épiques*, Paris, 1908-12, 4 vol.: *Hist. des Lettres en France au Moyen Age* (*Hist. de la Nation Française*, ed. Hanotaux), 1922. J. COULET, *Études sur l'Ancien Poème Français du Voyage de Charlemagne en Orient*, Montpellier, 1907. P. BOISSONNADE, *Du Nouveau sur la Chanson de Roland*, Paris, 1923. ULYSSE CHEVALIER, *Répertoire des Sources Hist. du Moyen Age*: Bio-



*Bibliographie*, Paris, 1905, Godefroy de Bouillon; REIFFENBERG, *Le Chev. au Cygne et G. de Bouillon* (*Monuments pour servir à l'hist. des provinces de Namur, etc.* iv-vi); TORQUATO TASSO, *Gerusalemme Liberata*, 1581; Eng. trans. by Edward Fairfax, *Godfrey of Boulogne: or The Recouerie of Ierusalem*, 1600.

(v) Byzantine, Armenian and Arabic sources. (1) ANNA COMNENA, *Alexias*, *Corp. Script. Hist. Byz.* xlix, ed. Schopen and Reifferscheid; *Rec. Hist. Grecs*, i, ii. MIGNE, *Pat. Graeca*, t. cxxxi. (2) DUCANGE, *Notae ad Annae Alex.*, *Rec. Hist. Grecs*, ii. (3) *Recueil: Documents arméniens*. (4) *Rec.: Hist. orientaux*, i (Abulfeda, *Annales*). (5) *Kamāl ad-dīn* (Hist. of Aleppo), ed. Röhricht (trans.), *Beiträge zur Gesch. d. Kreuzz.*, Berlin, 1874. Cf. Willken, *Gesch. der Kreuzz.* (6) MICHAUD, *Bibliothèque des Croisades*, iv. 1829.

II. *Modern Works on the First Crusade*. VON SYBEL, *Gesch. des ersten Kreuzzuges*, 1st ed. 1841, 2nd ed. 1881; R. RÖHRICHT, *Gesch. des ersten Kreuzzuges*, Innsbruck, 1901; H. HAGENMEYER *Peter der Eremit*, Leipzig, 1879; French trans., F. RAYNAUD, *Le vrai et le faux sur Pierre l'hermite*, Paris, 1883; *Chronologie de la Première Croisade*, Paris, 1902, and *Rev. de l'Orient latin* vi et seq.; F. CHALANDON, *Essai sur le règne d'Alexis Comnène*, Paris, 1900; PAULOT, *Un pape français, Urbain II*, Paris, 1903; CRÉGAT, *Le Concile de Clermont et la première croisade*, Clermont, 1895; DANA C. MUNRO, 'The Speech of Pope Urban at Clermont, 1095', *American Hist. Rev.*, 1906, Jan. p. 231; B. KUGLER, *Albert von Aachen*, Stuttgart, 1885 (cf. Hagenmeyer, G. F., *Bibl. Register, Kugler*); F. DUNCALF, 'The Peasants' Crusade', *Amer. Hist. Rev.*, 1921, p. 440; THEODOR WOLFF, *Die Bauernkreuzzüge*, Tübingen, 1891; E. HEYCK, *Die Kreuzzüge und das heilige Land. illus.*, Leipzig, 1906; REY, *Étude sur les monuments de l'architecture militaire des croisés en Syrie etc.*, Paris, 1871. *Collection des Documents inédits sur l'histoire de France*. SIR C. OMAN, *A History of the Art of War*, 2 vols., London, 1924, revised and enlarged. BAEDEKER, *Guide Book: Palestine and Syria* (for topography).



# CHRONOLOGY

**1095**

*Nov. 18-28.* Council of Clermont.

**1096**

*March 1-8.* Walter the Penniless and Peter the Hermit start for the East.

*June.* Defeat of Folkmar in Hungary.

*July.* Defeat of Gottschalk in Hungary. Fight between P. the Hermit's army and Bulgarians at Nish. Arrival of W. the Penniless at Constantinople.

*Aug. 1.* Arrival of P. the Hermit at Constantinople.

*6-7.* The army of P. the Hermit crosses the Bosphorus;

*circ. 10-11,* and encamps at Civitot.

*Aug.* Defeat of Emicho near Wieselburg in Hungary.

*circ. 15.* Godfrey of Bouillon starts for the East.

*Sept.* Bohemund and Tancred take the cross at the siege of Amalfi.

*Sept. or Oct.* Robert of Normandy, Robert of Flanders, and Stephen of Blois start for the East.

*Sept. 20-29.* Rainald's Lombards and Germans occupy the fort of *Exerogorgo*. The Turks defeat them and besiege the fort.

*Oct.* P. the Hermit returns to Constantinople. Hugh the Great taken prisoner at Durazzo.

*Oct. 7.* The Turks take *Exerogorgo* and massacre Rainald's followers.

*21.* The Turks defeat W. the Penniless between Civitot and Nicaea, and besiege Civitot.

*23-24.* The Turks raise the siege of Civitot. Rescue of the surviving Crusaders by the Greeks.

*Dec. 23.* Arrival of G. of Bouillon at Constantinople.

*25.* Bohemund's army celebrates Christmas at Castoria.

**1097**

*Feb. 18.* Battle of the Vardar; defeat of the Greeks by Tancred.

*circ. 20.* G. of Bouillon crosses the Bosphorus.

*April 1.* Arrival of Bohemund's army at Ruskoï (*Rusa*).

*5.* R. of Normandy and S. of Blois embark at Bari.

*26-27.* The armies of Bohemund and Raymond of Toulouse arrive at Constantinople.

*May 14.* Siege of Nicaea.

*16.* The Crusaders defeat a relieving force of Turks.

*June 17-18.* Greek ships launched on Lake Ascanius.

*19.* Capitulation of Nicaea to the Greeks.

*circ. 25.* Embassy sent by the Crusaders to Egypt.

*26.* Bohemund's army leaves Nicaea.

*July 1.* Battle of Dorylaeum. Defeat of the Turks under Kiliç Arslān.

*Sept. circ. 10.* Arrival of Bohemund's army at Heraclea.

*circ. 14-21.* Cilician expedition of Baldwin and Tancred.



Evacuation of Tarsus by the Turks. Quarrel of Baldwin and Tancred.

*Sept.-Oct.* Tancred takes Adana and Mopsuestia. March of Bohemund's army by Caesarea, Plastencia, Coxon, and Marash to Antioch.

*Oct. circ. 17.* Baldwin leaves the main army for the territory of Edessa.

*20.* Bohemund wins the Iron Bridge after a fight with the Turks.

*21.* Bohemund encamps east of Antioch.

*20-22.* Investment of Antioch by the Crusaders.

*circ. 24.* The Provençal Crusaders build a bridge of boats.

*Nov. circ. 17.* Genoese ships reach the Port of St. Simeon.

*circ. 18.* Expedition against the Turks of Harenc.

*circ. 23.* Building of fort *Maregart*.

*Dec. 28.* Plunder-raid of Bohemund and R. of Flanders.

*29.* Sortie of Turks in Antioch. Defeat of the Franks.

*31.* Bohemund and R. of Flanders defeat the Turks at El-Bara.

## 1098

*Jan.* Famine. P. the Hermit and W. the Carpenter try to escape, but are brought back by Tancred.

*Feb. 9. Shrove Tuesday.* Battle of the Lake of Antioch. Defeat of Ridwan of Aleppo and destruction of Harenc. Fight between the Crusaders in camp and the Turkish garrison of Antioch.

*March 4.* English ships reach the Port of St. Simeon.

*5.* Sortie of the Turks from Antioch.

*5-6.* Expedition of Bohemund and Raymond of Toulouse to

the Port of St. Simeon. Fight with the Turks on their return journey. Great victory of the Crusaders over the Turks outside Antioch.

*8-19.* The Crusaders build the fort *Machumaria*.

*April.* Tancred undertakes to guard the west side of the city of Antioch.

*May 29.* Council of Crusading leaders. Decision to grant Antioch to Bohemund if he succeeds in taking the city.

*June 2.* Stephen of Blois withdraws to Alexandretta.

*2-3.* Firuz betrays Antioch to the Crusaders. Bohemund enters the city. Flight and death of Yagi Sian.

*4.* Death of Roger of Barneville in a sortie.

*5-6.* Arrival of the army of Kerboga, Emir of Mosul, before Antioch.

*7-8.* The Turks attack *Machumaria*. The Franks set fire to the fort and retire.

*10.* Fight between Turks and Crusaders on the south side of Antioch.

*10-11.* Flight of the 'rope-dancers' from Antioch.

*11.* Fight near the citadel of Antioch.

*14-28.* Famine in Antioch.

*14.* Invention of the Holy Lance

*circ. 15.* Hugo li Forcenez bravely defends a tower in Antioch.

*circ. 20.* S. of Blois meets the Emperor Alexius at Philomelium in Asia Minor, and prevents him from coming to the relief of Antioch.

*27.* Embassy of P. the Hermit and Herluin to Kerboga.

*28.* Great Battle of Antioch. Defeat of Kerboga. Surrender of the citadel of Antioch to the Crusaders.

*July.* Embassy of Hugh the



Great and Baldwin of Hainault to Alexius.  
*circ. 14-17.* Raid of Raymond Piletus and capture of the fortress of Tell-mannas.  
*Aug. 1.* Death of Adhémar, Bishop of Le Puy, at Antioch.  
*26.* The Egyptian emir El-Afdal takes Jerusalem from the Seljuk Turks.  
*Sept.* R. of Toulouse takes Albara.  
*Nov. 28.* R. of Toulouse and Rob. of Flanders besiege Marra. Bohemund joins them.  
*Dec. 11-12.* Capture and pillage of Marra by the Crusaders. Famine at Marra.  
*29.* Bohemund returns to Antioch.

**1099**

*Jan.* Meeting of Crusading leaders at Rugia.  
*13.* R. of Toulouse leads his followers out of Marra. He and Tancred arrive at Kafartab. R. of Normandy joins them.  
*16-29.* The Crusaders, led by R. of Toulouse and R. of Normandy, march by Sheyzar, Cephalia, and the plain of Bukeia, to the castle (Crac), which they occupy.  
*Feb. circ. 4.* Negotiations with the Emirs of Homs (*Camela*) and Tripoli.  
*circ. 14.* The Crusaders reach Arca.  
*circ. 16-17.* Raids against Tripoli and Tortosa. Raymond Piletus takes Tortosa.  
*end of Feb.* G. of Bouillon, R. of Flanders and Bohemund go from Antioch to Laodicea.  
*March 1-2.* G. of Bouillon and R. of Normandy besiege Jebelli (*Gibellum*). Bohemund returns to Antioch.  
*12.* Godfrey and Robert go to the help of R. of Toulouse at Arca.

*April.* Envoys from the Emperor Alexius arrive at Arca.  
*8.* Peter Bartholomew undergoes the ordeal of fire at Arca.  
*circ. 18.* The Crusaders attack Tripoli.  
*20.* Death of Peter Bartholomew.  
*May 13.* The Crusaders raise the siege of Arca and go to Tripoli.  
*May 16-June 7.* The Crusaders march to Jerusalem by Batrûn (*Bethelon*), Byblus (*Zebari*), Beyrout, Sidon, Tyre, Acre, Caesarea, Rama, and Emmaus.  
*June 6-7.* Tancred advances as far as Bethlehem, but returns to Jerusalem.  
*June 7-July 15.* Siege of Jerusalem by the Crusaders.  
*June 13.* The Crusaders attack the city.  
*18.* Communications established with the Genoese ships at Joppa.  
*19.* The Egyptian fleet compels the Genoese at Joppa to abandon their ships.  
*July 8.* Procession of Crusaders round Jerusalem.  
*10-13.* Expedition of Tancred and Eustace of Boulogne to Nablûs.  
*13-14.* General attack on the Holy City by the Crusaders.  
*15.* Jerusalem taken by the Crusaders.  
*16.* Massacre of the fugitives on the roof of the Temple.  
*17.* Conference of the Crusading leaders.  
*22.* Election of Godfrey of Bouillon as Advocate of the Holy Sepulchre.  
*circ. 25.* Second expedition of Tancred to Nablûs.  
*Aug. 1.* Election of Arnulf as Patriarch of Jerusalem.  
*12.* Battle of Ascalon.



# INDEX

(The references are to the pages of the Latin text.)

- Achardus de Monte Merloi, de Mommellou, 5, 87.  
 Acra, 85.  
 S. Aegidii comes: *see* Raimundus.  
 Aegyptiaca gens, 96.  
 Agulani, Angulani, 19, 43, 47.  
 Alamanni, 2, 3.  
 Albara, Albaria, 72, 75; episcopus electus, 72.  
 Alberedus de Cagnano, 7.  
 Albricus, Albericus de Grentemaisnil, 54.  
 Aleph (Aleppo), 4, 29, 50, 53-4, 71.  
 Alexandreta, 60.  
 Alexius, imperator Graecorum, 5-6, 8-12, 15-17, 25, 33, 43, 61, 63, 69, 73-4.  
 Alpibus: *see* Petrus.  
 Amazonia flumina, 49.  
 Ammiratus, amiratus, ammiralius, amiralius, ammiravissus, ammiravissus (Emir), 36, 39-40, 42, 46-8, 66, 68-9, 82-3, 90-2, 94-5, 97.  
 S. Andreas, 57.  
 Andronopolis, 7.  
 Anselmus de Riboatmont (de Ribodi monte), 84.  
 Antiochia, 4, 11, 25-7, 29-30, 41, 44, 46-7, 49-50, 52, 55, 60-1, 71-5, 78-9, 82.  
 Antiochus, 75.  
 Apostolicus, (Papa) 1, (Calipha) 46, 49.  
 Apulia, 50.  
 Arabes, 18-21, 29, 46, 75, 80-1, 83, 86-7, 92-3.  
 Archa, 81-2, castrum, 83-4.  
 Aregh, Areg (Harenc), 28, 33.  
 Arnulfus patriarcha, 91-4, 96: *see* Hierusalem, Patriarcha.  
 Asia, 49.  
 Athena, 24.  
 Azimitae, 43, 47.  
 Babylonia (Cairo), 36, 40, 84, 92; via Babylonica, terra Babylonica, 96.  
 Balduinus frater ducis (Baldwin I, King of Jerusalem), 2, 6, 23-4.  
 Balduinus comes de Monte, (Baldwin, Count of Hainault), 2.  
 Bardarum flumen (Vardar), 8.  
 Bari, 5.  
 Baruth, 85.  
 Beert: *see* Gaston.  
 Bethelon, 85.  
 Bisanteus, bizanteus, 46, 60, 78, 84, 96; aureus, 40.  
 Boamundus (Bohemund), 5-14, 17-19, 24-38, 42-6, 53, 56, 58-9, 61-2, 66, 68-9, 73-5, 77-9, 82.  
 Boello Carnotensis, 7.  
 Botrenthrot, 23.  
 Brachium S. Georgii (Bosphorus), 2, 5-6, 12.  
 Brandosi, 5.  
 Braym, 85.  
 Bulgaria, 7, 50, 63.  
 Burgus Constantinopolis, 5-6, 12.  
 Caesarea, Cesarea, 24, 85, 92; rex, 79.  
 Calipha, 46, 49.  
 Camela, 81.  
 Capharda, 79.  
 Cappadocia, 24.  
 Carnotensis: *see* Boello, Stephanus.



- Carolus Magnus, 2.  
 Carpentarius : *see* Wilhelmus.  
 Cassianus (Yagi-Sian), 45-7 ;  
     filius, 47 ; palatium, 58, 74.  
 Castellione : *see* Petrus.  
 Castellum, 7, 10 ; Antiochiaie,  
     55, 58-9, 65, 68, 74 (citadel) ;  
     79 (Bridge Gate) ; Areg, 33 ;  
     Tancredi, 67 ; siege-engines,  
     59, 89-90.  
 Castoria, 7-8.  
 Castrum : *see* Alexandreta,  
     Antiochia, Archa, Areg,  
     Bethelon, Cayphas, Cyvito,  
     Exerogorgo, Machumaria,  
     Maregart, Publicani, Tala-  
     mania ; castrum quod-  
     dam, 80 ; Arabum, 80-1 ;  
     haereticorum, 8 ; Sarraceno-  
     rum, 70 ; castra, 21, 24.  
 Cayphas, 85.  
 Christiani, 4, 7, 12, 21-5, 29,  
     31, 46, 49, 51-3, 55, 62-4,  
     75, 79, 81, 85, 91-2, 95.  
 Christianitas, 30, 42, 60, 64, 68,  
     70, 76.  
 Conostabilis, 35.  
 Constantinopolis, 2, 4-6, 9-12,  
     15-17, 63, 69.  
 Corpalatius, 9, 10.  
 Corosanum, Corozanum, 4-5,  
     14, 36, 46-7, 49, 65.  
 Coxon, 25.  
 Curbaram (Kerboga), 46-54,  
     64, 66, 68 ; mater, 50-4.  
 Curti (Kurds), 47.  
 Cyria : *see* Syria.  
 Cyvito, Civito, 4, 15.  
  
 Damascus, 29 ; rex, 46.  
 Dature : *see* Gulferius.  
 Daud Propheta, 51.  
 S. Demetrius, 67.  
 Desem, de Sem, 80, 83.  
 Deus le volt, 6, 45.  
 Diabolus, 38 : *see* Sathanae  
     ministri.  
 Durachium (Durazzo), 5.  
  
 Erachia (Heraclea), 22.  
 Eurardus de Puisatio, 5.  
  
 Eustachius comes, frater Gode-  
     fredi, 89, 92, 94.  
 Euuardus venator, 76.  
 Exerogorgo, 3.  
  
 Fames, 31, 33, 60, 65, 78.  
 Farfar (Orontes), 74, 79.  
 Farreus pons, 27, 33, 35, 48, 67.  
 Fiducia, 12.  
 Flandrensis comes : *see* Rot-  
     bertus.  
 Franci, 2, 6, 15-16, 20, 23,  
     43-50, 53, 66, 68, 71, 75,  
     78-80, 85, 88, 90.  
 Francia, 2, 31.  
 Francigenae, gens Francigena,  
     32, 49, 65, 90, 96.  
  
 Galliae, 1, 2, 31.  
 Galli, 2.  
 Gaston de Beert, 90, 94.  
 Gentiles, 58 ; nationes, 43 ;  
     volumina gentilium, 52-3.  
 S. Georgius, 67 ; ecclesia, 85 :  
     *see* Brachium.  
 Gibellum, (Jebelli), 83.  
 Godefridus dux (Godfrey of  
     Bouillon), 2, 5-6, 10, 12, 15,  
     17-19, 23-4, 44, 56, 59,  
     65, 67, 69, 73, 78, 82, 84, 86,  
     88-9, 91-4.  
 Gosfredus de monte Scabioso,  
     de Monte Scaioso, 20, 58 :  
     *see* Hunfredus.  
 Graeci, 2, 10, 20, 93 ; Graecus  
     ignes, 76.  
 Grentemaisnil : *see* Wilhelmus.  
 Gulferius de Dature : 76-7.  
 Guualterius sine habere (Walter  
     the Penniless), 4.  
  
 Herluinus, 63, 65.  
 Hermannus de Cani, 7.  
 Hermenii, 20, 24, 26-7, 31, 35,  
     39, 41, 46, 68.  
 Hierusalem (Jerusalem), 29,  
     84, 86, 89, 92-3, 96-7 ;  
 Hierosolymitanus Ammira-  
     lius, 46 ; Hierosolimitanum  
     iter, 32, 56, 84.



- Hispania, 32.  
 Hominium, 12, 47.  
 Hugo li Forcenez, 58.  
 Hugo Magnus (Count of Vermandois), 5, 17-19, 65, 67, 69.  
 Hunfredus filius Radulfi, 7.  
 Hunfredus de Monte Scabioso, 7 : *see* Gosfredus.  
 Hungaria, 2.  
 Iaphia, 87.  
 Idus Februarii, 36 ; Aprilis, 83 ; Iunii, 86 ; Aug., 97.  
 Imperator : *see* Alexius.  
 India, 50.  
 Instrumenta, 13, 40, 76, 96-7 : *see* Machinae.  
 Isuardus de Musone, 5.  
 Kalendae, Augusti, 2 ; Octobris, 3 ; Nou., 27, 70 ; Iul., 69.  
 Kephalia, 80.  
 Lacus, (Niceae) 15, (Antiochia) 34.  
 Lambertus Pauper, 54.  
 Lancea Salvatoris (Holy Lance), 57, 63, 65.  
 Latini, 93.  
 Legatio, 15, 46.  
 Legati, 36, 78 : *see* Nuntii.  
 Letholdus, 89.  
 Lichia (Laodicea), 82.  
 Lombardi, 2.  
 Longobardi, 2, 68 ; Longobardus serviens, 44.  
 Machinae, machinamenta, 59, 88-9, 96 : *see* Instrumenta.  
 Machomet, Machumet, 50, 96.  
 Machumaria, Machomaria, 36, 39, 66.  
 Maiores, 11, 15, 28-9, 36-7, 55, 60, 63-4, 69, 85 ; et minores, 42, 51, 72 ; civitatis, 23 ; Saracenorum, 77 ; Turcorum, 39.  
 Mala corona, 44.  
 Malfi Scafardi pontis (Amalfi), 6.  
 Manustra, 24.  
 Maraclea, 82.  
 Marasi, 26.  
 Marca, marcha, 41, 96.  
 Maregart, 28.  
 S. Mariae ecclesiae (Antiochia) 55, 59, (in monte Sion) 86.  
 Marra, 71, 75, 79.  
 Marturanensis episcopus, 92-3.  
 S. Mercurius, 67.  
 Merulae, 44.  
 S. Mikahelis, 3.  
 Mommellou : *see* Achardus.  
 Monte Merloi : *see* Achardus.  
 Musone : *see* Isuardus.  
 Naves, 15, 32, 54, 83, 87 ; terrarum paganorum, 96.  
 Neopolitanam urbem (Nabulus, Nablûs), 92.  
 Nicea, 13, 21, 55 ; Nicena, 3-4, 12-13 ; siege of, C. VIII.  
 Nicomedia, 2, 12.  
 Nortmanniae, Nortmanniae comes : *see* Rotbertus.  
 Nuntii, nuncii, 15, 42-3, 65, 70, 79-80, 84, 87, 91.  
 Otrentum, 5.  
 Ostensio Christi, 6.  
 Oriensis episcopus (William, bishop of Orange), 78.  
 Pagani, 46, 48, 51, 60, 68, 70, 75-6, 80-3, 85, 87, 91, 94-6.  
 Paganismus, 76.  
 Palagonia, 8.  
 Palatium, 77-9 : *see* Cassianus.  
 Palatia urbis Const., 2.  
 Patriarcha, (Antiochia) 74, (Hierosol.) : *see* Arnulfus.  
 Pera (Wallet), 96.  
 Peregrini, 7, 10, 13, 28, 57, 63, 69-70, 79-80, 84, 90.  
 Persae, 19, 47, 67.  
 Persiae Soldanus, 46 ; Persidis Soldanus, 64.  
 Persis, 5.  
 S. Petrus, 26, 55-6, 64 ; cathedra, 73 ; ecclesia, 57, 59, 63, 73 ; ad Vincula, 72, 91.



- SS. Petrus et Paulus, 69.  
 Petrus de Alpibus, 25.  
 Petrus de Castellione, vicecomes, 25.  
 Petrus heremita (Peter the Hermit), 2, 4, 31, 63, 65, 93.  
 Petrus Reimundus de Pul, 25.  
 Petrus de Roasa, 25.  
 Philomena, 61.  
 Picardus : *see* Wilhelmus.  
 Pincinati, Pinzinaci, 6, 8.  
 Pirus, Pirius (Firuz), 42-4 ; frater Pirri, 45.  
 Podiensis episcopus (Adhémar, bishop of Le Puy), 5, 14-15, 17-19, 30, 44, 56, 65, 71.  
 Pons Farieus : *see* Farreus.  
 Porta, urbis, civitatis, 40-1 ; portas, 45 ; angusta porta, 54 ; comitis, ducis, Boamundi, portae, 59 ; murus portae, 66 : porta pontis, 74 ; palatium . . . supra portam, 77, 79 ; civitatis portam, 83 ; portarum exitus, 91.  
 Portus, 82-3 : *see* S. Simeonis portus.  
 Principes, 12, 24, 34, 70, 92 ; princeps civitatis, 91.  
 Publicani, 19, 25, 43, 46-7, 81.  
 Purpuratus, 31.  
 Pyrae, 91.  
  
 Raimundus, comes de S. Aegidio (Raymond of Saint Gilles), 5, 12-15, 17-19, 24-5, 36-8, 44, 59, 65, 68-70, 72-5, 78-84, 86-92, 94-5.  
 Raimundus Piletus, 70-1, 82, 86-7.  
 Raimundus, vicecomes de Tentoria, 82 ; de Taurina, 86.  
 Rainaldus, Reinaldus, senior Alamannorum et Longobardorum, 2-3.  
 Rainulfus, frater Richardi de Principatu, 7.  
 Ramola, 85 ; episcopus electus, 85.  
 Ramore, 92.  
  
 Reinaldus comes (Rainald of Toul), 66.  
 Riboatmont : *see* Anselmus.  
 Richardus de Principatu, 5, 12, 19 ; Richardus princeps, 7.  
 Richardus filius comitis Rainulfi, 7.  
 Roasa : *see* Petrus.  
 Robertus : *see* Rotbertus.  
 Rogerius de Barnavilla, 14.  
 Rogerius, comes Siciliae (Roger the Great Count), 7.  
 Romania (Rūm), 3, 13, 21, 32-3, 47, 49-50.  
 Rotbertus de Ansa, 7, 19.  
 Rottbertus, comes Flandrensis (Robert of Flanders), 5, 12, 17, 19, 29-30, 44, 56, 65, 67, 69, 73, 78, 82, 84, 86, 92, 94-5.  
 Rotbertus filius Girardi, constabilis Boamundi, 35.  
 Rotbertus, comes Nortmanniae (Robert of Normandy), 5, 14-15, 17, 19, 50, 65-6, 69, 73, 78-9, 84, 86, 91-2, 94, 96.  
 Rotbertus de Surda valle, 7.  
 Rotbertus filius Tostani, 7.  
 Rugia (Riha), civitas, 75, 78 ; vallem, 26.  
 Rusa (Ruskoï), 10 ; civitas (unidentified), 26.  
 Russinolo, Russignolo, comes de, 7-8.  
  
 Sabra : *see* Wilhelmus.  
 Sagitta (Sidon), 85.  
 Salomonis templum, 89.  
 Salvator, 55, 57, 65, 88, 90.  
 Sanctorum oracula, 72.  
 Saraceni, Sarraceni, 18-20, 26, 29-30, 36, 43-6, 70-2, 75, 77-8, 80-1, 83, 85-8, 90-1, 93 ; Saracenos et Saracenas, 72 ; Saracenorum terra, 72.  
 Sathanæ ministri, 38.  
 Saumarius, 26.  
 Scabioso, Scaioso : *see* Gosfredus, Hunfredus.



- Scalona (Ascalon), 91-3.  
 Sclavinia, 5.  
 Sem : *see* Desem.  
 Senescalcus, 30.  
 Seniores, 23, 25, 29, 32-3, 37, 42, 55-6, 61, 64, 69-70, 73, 75, 78-9, 83-4, 87-9, 93.  
 Sensadolus (Schems ed daula), 47.  
 Sepulcrum, Sepulchrum, Domini, Salvatoris, Sanctum Sepulcrum (the Holy Sepulchre), 1, 6-7, 25, 35, 38-9, 60, 62, 67, 69, 73-5, 79, 88, 90, 96 ; via Sancti Sepulcri, 11-12.  
 Serra, 9.  
 Sicilia, 7.  
 Signum, 4, 6, 67 ; signa, 76 ; signum crucis, 14, 29, 38, 67, 82.  
 S. Simeonis, Symeonis, portus, 37, 54, 74.  
 Simeon : *see* Symeon.  
 Sion, Syon, mons, 86-7.  
 Solarium, 76.  
 Soldanus, 49 : *see* Persiae, Persidis.  
 Solidi denariorum, 31 ; solidi, 60.  
 Solimanus (Kilij Arslān), 21 ; Solimanus vetus, 21.  
 Stantarum, 95-6.  
 S. Stephani ecclesia, 86.  
 Stephanus, comes Carnotensis (Stephen of Blois and Chartres), 14, 60-3.  
 Stipites, 13.  
 Stola recepti martyrii, 16, 38.  
 Sur, 85.  
 Suriani, Surani, Surrani, 20, 27, 31, 35, 39, 41, 46, 50, 68, 70-1.  
 Syloa fons, 87.  
 Symeon, 24.  
 Syria, Cyria, 26, 47, 49-50.  
 Talamania (Tell-mannas), 70.  
 Tancredus, Marchisi filius (Tancred), 7-10, 12, 15, 17, 19-20, 23-4, 31-2, 41, 53, 56, 66, 86, 90-2, 94-5 ; castellum Tancredi, 68 ; montanea Tancredi, 30 ; terra Tancredi, 45.  
 Tarsus, 23.  
 Taurina : *see* Raimundus.  
 Templum, 72 ; Domini, 93, Salomonis, 90-1.  
 Tenda, 31.  
 Tentoria : *see* Raimundus, Taurina.  
 Tetigus (Tatikios), 32-3.  
 Tortosa, 82.  
 Tripolis, 81, 84 ; rex, 81, 84.  
 Trursellus : *see* Wido.  
 Turci, 2-5, 13-15, 17-30, 32-5, 37-43, 45-6, 48, 50, 54, 58-61, 63-8, 71, 75, 80-3, 87.  
 Turcopoli, 5, 15.  
 Turris, turres (Antiochia), 42-5, 48, 56, 58, 68, 74 ; (David), 90 ; (Marrae), 76 ; (Niceae), 14 ; turres lignae, 13 ; turres murales, 13 : *see* castellum.  
 Vexillum, 19, 35, 45, 68, 82, 90.  
 Virgo (Maria), 55.  
 Vrbanus (Urban II), 1.  
 Vtres, 22.  
 Wido (Guy), frater Boamundi, 61-2.  
 Wido Trursellus, 54.  
 Wilhelmus Carpentarius, 31-2.  
 Wilhelmus de Grentemaisnil, 54.  
 Wilhelmus, Marchisi filius, frater Tancredi, 5, 20.  
 Wilhelmus de Monte Pislerio, 25, 76.  
 Wilhelmus Picardus, 84.  
 Wilhelmus de Sabra, 87.  
 Yconium (Iconium), 22.  
 Zebari (Byblus, Jiblah, Jebeil), 85.

Printed in England at the Oxford University Press







EASTERN  
EMPIRE  
ROMAN

Dorylaeum

Sivas

SELUK OF RUM  
SULTANATE OF ICONIUM

Iconium

ARMENIA

Marash

LESSER  
Cilicia

Tarsus

Mamistra

ED 1098 -

Pt of St Simeon

Antioch

Aleppo

ANTIOCH 1098 - 1268

Marra

Apamea

Hamah

Ems

Nicosia  
CYPRUS  
Limasol

Famagusta

Krak des Chevaliers

Tripolis

Byblus

Beirut

Sidon

Tyre

Acre

EMIRATE OF  
DAMASCUS  
1103 - 1154

Hattin

Tiberius

Caesarea

Arsuf

Jaffa

Ramlah

Ascalon

Darum

JERUSALEM 1099 - 1187

Krak of the Desert

Montreal

KING OF JERUSALEM 1099 - 1187

Aila

Alexandria

Damietta

Farama

El Arish

CALIPHATE OF CAIRO  
FATIMIDS

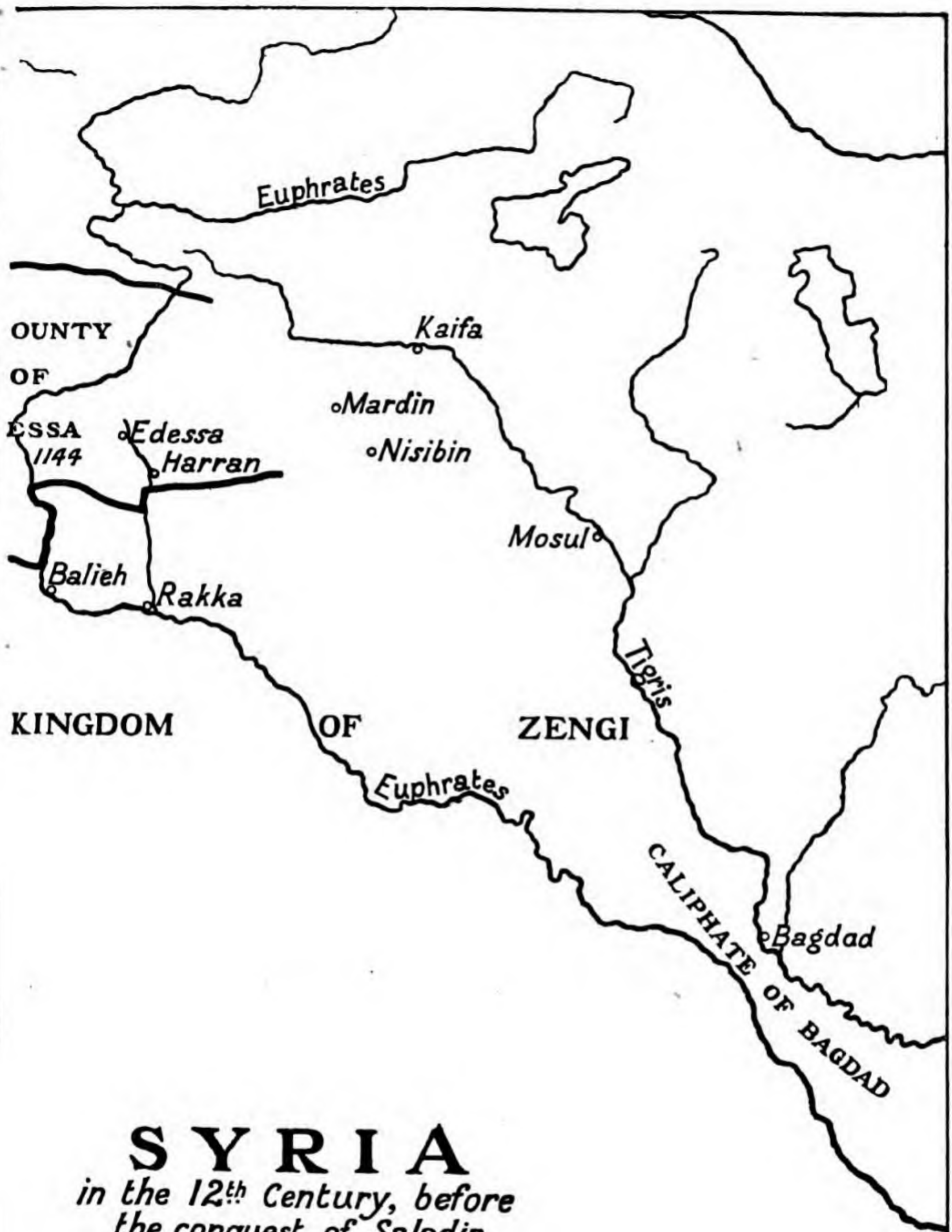
Cairo



89094690708

b89094690708a

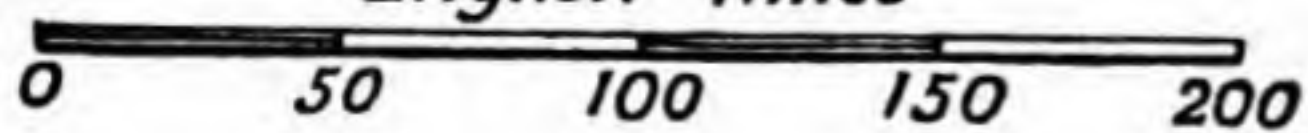




# SYRIA

*in the 12<sup>th</sup> Century, before  
the conquest of Saladin*

*English Miles*



*P.=Principality  
C. County*



89094690708



B89094690708A